OWNER´S MANUAL

Vehicle and Infotainment

ŠKODA RAPID SPACEBACK



ŠKODA

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Date of vehicle delivery[a] ☐☐ / ☐☐ / ☐☐☐☐

ŠKODA Partner

Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the specified vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Has the vehicle an extended warranty? Yes ☐ No ☐

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[b]

Years: _____ or km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a] Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

[b] Depending on which comes first.

5JJ012720AJ

1st vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
(filled in by the vendor)
belongs to:

Title, Name/Company:

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2nd vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
belongs to:

Title, Name/Company:

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

5JJ012720AJ

Useful links

Before starting off

Adjusting the seat	» page 70
Adjusting the steering wheel	» page 19
Exterior mirrors	» page 69
Head / tail lights	» page 60
Windscreen wipers and washers	» page 67
Heating and ventilation	» page 88
Heated windscreen	» page 66

Instrument cluster

Warning lights	» page 37
Display operation	» page 47
Time setting	» page 46

Unlocking and opening

Keyless unlocking (KESSY)	» page 53
Luggage compartment lid	» page 57
Power windows	» page 58
Bonnet	» page 199

Connectivity

Online Services – ŠKODA Connect	» page 12
SmartLink+	» page 136
Connecting Infotainment to the Internet	» page 134
Hotspot (WLAN)	» page 135
Making telephone calls	» page 127
Configuration wizard	» page 98

Driving

Automatic gearbox	» page 165
Braking and stabilizing systems	» page 169
START-STOPsystem	» page 161

Parking

Parking the vehicle	» page 163
Parking aid	» page 171
Reversing camera	» page 174

Care and maintenance

Service intervals	» page 51
Tyre pressure	» page 206
Washing the vehicle	» page 192
Folding the windscreen wiper arms securely	» page 220

Inspecting and replenishing

Refuelling	» page 196
Engine oil	» page 200
Windscreen washer fluid	» page 200

Emergencies

Emergency call	» page 15
Vehicle tool kit	» page 210
Lamp replacement	» page 225
Replacing fuses	» page 222
Changing a wheel	» page 210
Jump-starting	» page 216
Towing the vehicle	» page 217

Interesting tips

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual	» page 9
Tutorial videos	» page 10

Table of Contents

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars 6

Radio equipment - Information on Directive 2014/53/EU 8

About the Owner's Manual

Introductory information 9
- General 9
- Printed Owner's Manual 9
- Electronic version of the Owner's Manual 9
- Tutorial videos 10
- Application MyŠKODA App 10
- Notes 11

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect 12
- Service packageŠKODA Connect 12
- ŠKODA Connect website 12
- User and vehicle registration, activation of online services 12
- Managing online services 14
- Emergency call 15
- Care Connect Services 15
- Infotainment Online services 16

Safety

Passive Safety 18
- General information 18
- Correct and safe seating position 18

Seat belts 21
- Using seat belts 21
- Inertia reels and belt tensioners 23

Airbag system 24
- Description of the airbag system 24
- Airbag deactivation 26

Transporting children safely 28
- Child seat 28
- Fastening systems 31

Using the system

Cockpit 35
- Overview 34

Instruments and warning lights 36
- Instrument cluster 36
- Warning lights 37

Information system 46
- Driver information system 46
- Operation of the information system 47
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 48
- MAXI DOT display 50
- Service intervals 51

Unlocking and opening 52
- Unlocking and locking 52
- Anti-theft alarm system 56
- Boot lid 57
- Window operation 58

Lights and visibility 60
- Light 60
- Interior lighting 64
- Visibility 65
- Windscreen wipers and washers 67
- Rear view mirror 68

Seats and head restraints 70
- Front seats 70
- Rear seats 70
- Headrests 71
- Seat heaters 72

Useful features 73
- Passenger compartment features 73
- Electrical sockets 78
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter 79
- Tablet holder 80

Transport of cargo 81
- Luggage compartment and transporting objects 81
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 86
- Transportation on the roof rack 87

Heating and ventilation 88
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 88

Infotainment

Introductory information 92
- Important information 92
- Infotainment overview 92

Infotainment operation 94
- Infotainment operation 94
- Voice control 99
- Updating the Infotainment software 101

Infotainment settings - Amundsen 102
- Infotainment system settings 102
- Radio menu settings 105
- Media menu settings 105
- Image menu settings 105
- Telephone menu settings 106
- SmartLink+ menu settings 106
- Navigation menu settings 106

Infotainment settings – Swing 108
Infotainment system settings 108
Radio menu settings 110
Media menu settings 110
Telephone menu settings 111
SmartLink+ menu settings 111

Infotainment settings – Blues 111
Infotainment system settings 111
Radio menu settings 112
Media menu settings 112

Radio 113
Operation 113

Media 117
Operation 117
Audio sources 119

Images 124
Image viewer 124

Media Command 125
Using the system 125

Telephone 127
Introductory information 127
Pairing and connecting 128
Telephone functions 130
Text messages (SMS) 133

Data connection 134
Internet connection 134
Connecting via the CarStick device 134
Connecting via WLAN 135

SmartLink+ 136
Introductory information 136
Android Auto 137
Apple CarPlay 138
MirrorLink® 138
ApplicationŠKODA OneApp 139

Navigation 141
Introductory information 141
Search for destination and enter 143
Saved destinations 146
Import custom destinations 148
Map 150
Route guidance 152
Route 155
Traffic reports 156

Vehicle systems 158
CAR - Vehicle settings 158

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 159
Starting and stopping the engine 159
START-STOP system 161
Braking and parking 162
Manual gear changing and pedals 164
Automatic transmission 165
Running in and economical driving 167
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 168

Assist systems 169
General information 169
Braking and stabilisation systems 169
Parking aid (ParkPilot) 171
Reversing camera 174
Cruise Control System 176
Speed limiter 177
Front Assist 178
Fatigue detection system 181
Tyre pressure monitoring 182

Towing device and trailer 183
Hitch 183
Using the towing device 187

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 190
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 190
Cleaning and care 191

Inspecting and replenishing 196
Fuel 196
Engine compartment 198
Engine oil 200
Coolant 201
Brake fluid 202
Vehicle battery 203

Wheels 205
Wheels and tyres 205
Operating in winter conditions 208

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 209
Emergency equipment 209
Changing a wheel 210
Breakdown kit 213
Jump-starting 216
Towing the vehicle 217
Remote control – Changing the battery 218

Emergency unlocking/locking of doors 219
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 220

Fuses and light bulbs 222
Fuses 222
Bulbs 225

Technical data

Technical data 231
Basic vehicle data 231
Vehicle-specific details per engine type 235

Index

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will provide the following services.
- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paintwork defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only corrosion of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the new car is handed over to the initial purchaser by the ŠKODA Partner[1]. This date must be noted down by the ŠKODA Partner in the Owner's Manual for your vehicle » *in the section on the documentation of the vehicle handover*.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

The ŠKODA warranty is valid at any ŠKODA service partner.

A prerequisite for carrying out work under the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and technically correct manner and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions when making a claim on the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that were not installed and/or delivered ex-factory.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following:
- Unauthorised use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorised modifications to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with instructions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).
- Parts fitted or connected on or in the vehicle whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that s/he is not the cause of the damage.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

[1] Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

If your vehicle should break down during a journey due to an unexpected defect, you can claim services to ensure your continued mobility under the terms of the mobility warranty, including the following services: Breakdown assistance at the site of the breakdown and towing to a ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance on the phone or on-site commissioning.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage in place for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a supplementary agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty with regards to all free warranty repairs is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion described above are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

i Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

Radio equipment - Information on Directive 2014/53/EU



Fig. 1
ŠKODA websites

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

The manufacturers of these radio systems declare that these systems comply with the requirements of Directive 2014/53/EU.

To display the respective **declaration of conformity**, proceed as follows.

1. Scan the QR code » Fig. 1 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

   The web page with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand is opened.
2. Select the desired model - a menu with the manuals is displayed.
3. Select the construction period as well as the language.
4. Select the **declaration of conformity** file in **pdf** format.

About the Owner's Manual

Introductory information

General

Read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. for transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

Always pay attention when driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

The Owner's Manual applies to all **body variants** of the vehicle, all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

The Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in the Owner's Manual.

The range of equipment installed in your vehicle depends on the purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **pictures** in the Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in the Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in the Owner's Manual.

We recommend that the **web pages** that are referred to in the Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. If the web pages are displayed using the mobile view, they may not contain all necessary information.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual includes the most important information relating to vehicle operation. For complete information, see the electronic version of the Owner's Manual.

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual



Fig. 2
ŠKODA websites

The electronic version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The electronic version of the Owner's Manual is available on the ŠKODA website and in the MyŠKODA App mobile application.

Displaying the electronic version of the Owner's Manual

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 2 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

› Select the desired model.
› Select the construction period as well as the language.
› Select the desired Owner's Manual.

Tutorial videos



Fig. 3
Tutorial videos

The operation of some vehicle functions can be displayed in the form of video instructions.

Show menu with video instructions

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 3 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals-videos

Note

The video instructions are only available in some language versions.

Application MyŠKODA App



Fig. 4 **The MyŠKODA App application is available for devices with the Android (Google) or iOS (Apple) operating system.**

The MyŠKODA App application contains, for example, the electronic version of the Owner's Manual, quick tips regarding how to resolve certain situations in relation to the vehicle or a description of the Simply Clever solutions.

You can use this application to get in touch with a ŠKODA partner and to use its services or to access the breakdown service quickly.

The application can also be used as an RSS reader of favourite websites.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information about the application.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

Installing the MyŠKODA App application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 4 .

Notes

Terms used

“Specialist garage” - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA Service Partner” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA Partner” - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

“Hold” - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Explanation of symbols

→ Marker to the next operation step

Repeatedly pressing the button

WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Service packageŠKODA Connect

The ŠKODA Connect online services extend the vehicle and Infotainment functions with the CareConnect and Infotainment Online service packages.

Care Connect
The CareConnect services include the following features.

- Emergency, information and breakdown call.
- Proactive service offering to connect with your ŠKODA service partner.
- Remote access to the vehicle using the ŠKODA Connect application.

In order for the Care Connect services to work, a mobile network must be available.

Infotainment online
The Infotainment Online services extend the Infotainment functions, e.g. with the following functions.

- Weather forecast.
- Filling station search with information on fuel prices.
- Online traffic information.
- Online destination search.

The Infotainment system must be connected to the Internet for the Infotainment Online services to work» page 134.

Terms of use and availability of services
Current **"conditions for the use of the user account"** incl. **"declaration on the protection of personal data"** can be found in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.

The availability of the services is dependent on the type of vehicle and on the type of Infotainment system installed in the vehicle. Some services are available only in certain countries.

Note
The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this period of validity, interim content changes to these services are possible.

ŠKODA Connect website



Fig. 5 **Starting ŠKODA Connect**

The ŠKODA Connect website contains information about the online services and their functions, access to the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, as well as the option to download the ŠKODA Connect App application.

The ŠKODA Connect website can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 5 **or** by entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

User and vehicle registration, activation of online services

Website ŠKODA Connect Portal



Fig. 6 **Starting the ŠKODA Connect Portal website**

The use of the ŠKODA Connect online services requires prior user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website as well as activation of online services in the Infotainment system.

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 6 **or** by entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Information on registering for and activating online services



Fig. 7 **Instruction video on how to register for and activate services**



Fig. 8 **Electronic version of the instructions for registration and activation of services**

Instruction video on how to register for and activate services
Registration and activation are carried out in accordance with the instruction video.

The instruction video can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 7 **or** entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-video

Electronic version of the instructions for registration and activation of services
Current information on **registration and activation** of Online Services can be found in the **electronic version** of the instructions for the Online Services on the ŠKODA Connect website.

The electronic version of the instructions can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 8 **or** by entering the following address in the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-manual

Note
For help with registration, activation as well as the Internet connection, please contact a ŠKODA service partner.

Activation in Infotainment

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› Wait until the message **Registration complete.** is displayed (can take several minutes) and confirm the message.

Note

■ Availability of a GPS signal and a mobile network is required for activation.
■ In vehicles that only have Infotainment Online Services, a GPS signal must be available and the Infotainment must be connected with the Internet for activation.
■ The list of services can be displayed » page 14, *Display of service management*.

Deleting/switching the vehicle user

Deleting the user

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete owner** → **Delete** and confirm the delete process.

Changing the user

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Tap the function surface **New owner** → **Transfer ownership**.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change of user by tapping the function surface **Change main users**.

Note

By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, the user is also deleted in the infotainment system.

Managing online services

Display of service management

In Services Management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their license, or to switch the services on/off.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management**.
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.
› For **detailed information about the service** tap the function surface > .
› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the function surface with “Checkbox”.

Switching online services on/off in the Infotainment system

Switching Private mode function on/off

By switching the **Private mode** function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of services, are deactivated.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Private mode**.

Switching Care Connect services on/off

By switching the Care Connect services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of services, are deactivated.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Care Connect**.

Switching Infotainment Online services on/off

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Infotainment Online**.

Note

The **emergency call** remains fully functional after activation of the **Private mode** function or after deactivation of Care Connect. The functions of the **information and breakdown call** are limited.

Activated localisation services

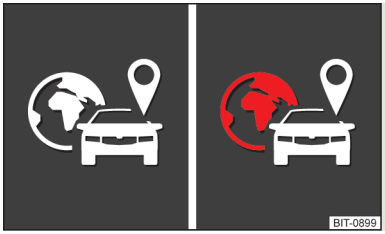


Fig. 9
Symbols of activated localisation services

For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, one of the following symbols will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen » Fig. 9,

Emergency call

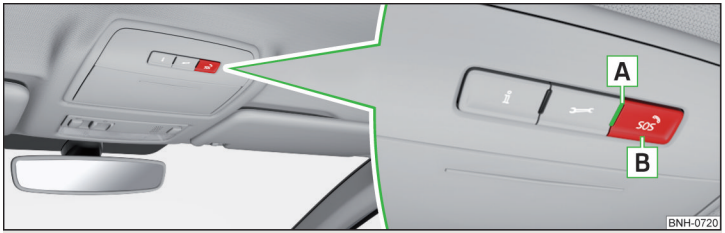


Fig. 10 **Emergency call button**

Automatic start of a call with the emergency call centre
In the event of an accident, a call is **automatically** started with the emergency call centre. The emergency call centre simultaneously receives information on the accident, e.g. the location and severity of the accident, the number of occupants with fastened seatbelts and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Manual start of a call with the emergency call centre
› Press and hold the B » Fig. 10 button.

› In the Infotainment screen or on the instrument cluster display, confirm the connection setup.

The call can be started manually, for example, if you are reporting an accident in which you were not directly involved.

The **system status** is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A » Fig. 10.

▶ Green - the system is functional.
▶ Red - there is a fault in the system.

Note
The emergency service is functional even without user registration and activation of services.

Care Connect Services

Proactive service



Fig. 11 **Buttons and warning lights of the Care Connect services**

The **proactive service** provides an overview of the technical status of your vehicle and on any due service events. It is also possible to establish a connection to the information or breakdown call centre.

Buttons and warning lights of the Care Connect services » Fig. 11

A Warning light for system status.

B Press this button to establish a call to the **information number** in the event of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

C Press this button to establish a call to the **breakdown number** in the event of a breakdown.

The **system status** is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A » Fig. 11.

- Green - the system is functional.
- Red - there is a fault in the system.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this period of validity, interim content changes to these services are possible. Current information can be found on the ŠKODA Connect website» page 12.

Remote access to the vehicle

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Fig. 12 **ŠKODA Connect application**

With the **remote access to the vehicle** service, you can access some vehicle functions via the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or the ŠKODA Connect application installed on your mobile device.

Installing the ŠKODA Connect mobile application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 12 .

Remote access to the vehicle includes, for example, the following services.

- Driving data.
- Vehicle condition.
- Last parking position.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this period of validity, interim content changes to these services are possible. Current information can be found on the ŠKODA Connect website» page 12.

Infotainment Online services

Main menu and overview of services

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.



Fig. 13
Main menu

These services extend the functionality of the Internet-connected Infotainment.

To **display** the main menu » Fig. 13, press the button MENU, the tap the function surface .

- News from the RSS channels set in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- Online search for filling stations with information on fuel prices » page 145
- P Online search for car parks with information on free parking spaces » page 145
- Weather forecast near the vehicle position, the destination of the route or in the vicinity of the selected location
- Online POI search » page 143
- Import of the destinations created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website » page 149
- Import of the routes created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website » page 156
- Online import of POI Categories » page 141

Conditions for the use of Online Services

Settings of Online Services » page 104

For more information on the available services, see the ŠKODA Connect website» page 12.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this period of validity, interim content changes to these services are possible. Current information can be found on the ŠKODA Connect website» page 12.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

In this section of the instructions you will find important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the subsequent sections of this Owner's Manual. The Owner's Manual should therefore always be kept in the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the lights and turn signal lights are functioning correctly.
- Check the wiper function and the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no parts and components are visibly loose in the vehicle.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children using a suitable child seat » page 28, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position » page 18, *Correct and safe seating position*.

Driving safety

For safety in traffic, the following precautions must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol, drugs or similar).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seating position

Introduction

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to one side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

WARNING

- The adjustable seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 28, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

Driver's correct seated position

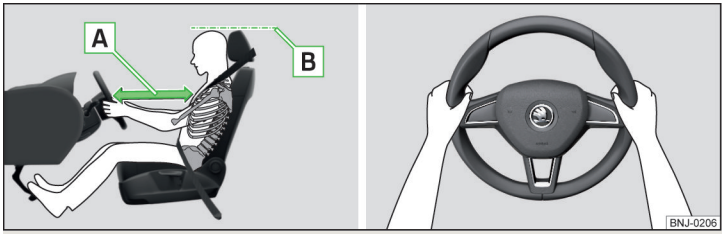


Fig. 14 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 14 - A.

✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is, where possible, at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests) » Fig. 14 - B.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 21, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

- A distance of least 25 cm to the steering wheel should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 14. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, you could sustain serious injury to the arms, hands and head if the airbag is activated.
- Ensure there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get behind the pedals while driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 15 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Turn the safety lever beneath the steering wheel towards the arrow 1 » Fig. 15.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.

› Pull the holder until it stops in arrow direction 3.

WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- The safety lever must always be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Passenger's correct seating position

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head » Fig. 14 *on page 19* - B (not for seats with integrated headrest).

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 21, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

- A distance of least 25 cm to the dashboard should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Passengers' correct seating position on the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 19 first.

For the safety of the passengers in the rear seats, and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is, where possible, at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 14 *on page 19*-B.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 21, *Using seat belts*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting a child the following instructions must be observed » page 28, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten seat belts before every ride! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 18, *Correct and safe seating position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not attach clamps or similar objects to the belt - the function of the belt retractor could be restricted.
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 70.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 194.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If damage to the parts of the seat belt system (e.g. the strap, the belt connectors, the retractor, the lock or similar) are detected, the seat belt in question must be replaced immediately by a specialist.
- Seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident should be replaced by a specialist garage. Also check the seat belt anchors.

Correct routing of seat belt

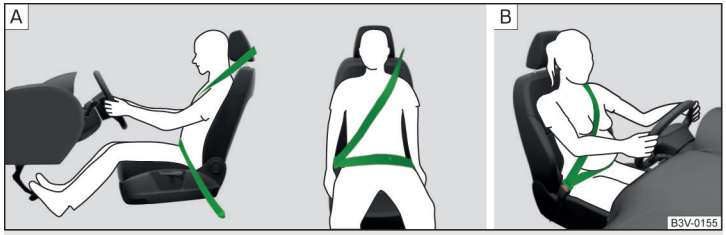


Fig. 16 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

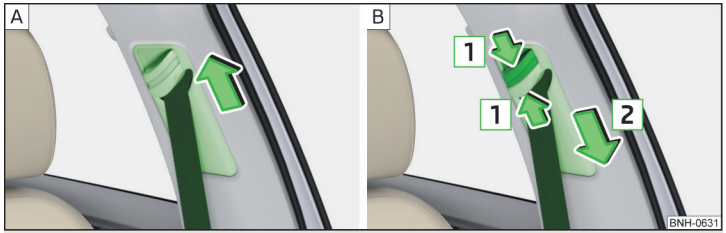


Fig. 17 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder belt** should be positioned approximately over the middle of your shoulder (on no account across your neck) and lie flush to the chest » Fig. 16 - A.

The **lower part of the belt** should run across the pelvis (it should not lie on top of the stomach) and must always fit snugly » Fig. 16 - A.

For **pregnant women**, the lower part of the belt must be positioned as low down as possible across the pelvis, to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 16 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the seat belt guide loop **upwards** in the direction of arrow» Fig. 17 - A.
› **Or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 17 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is blocked reliably » page 23, *Inertia reels*.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. pencils, spectacles, pens, keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

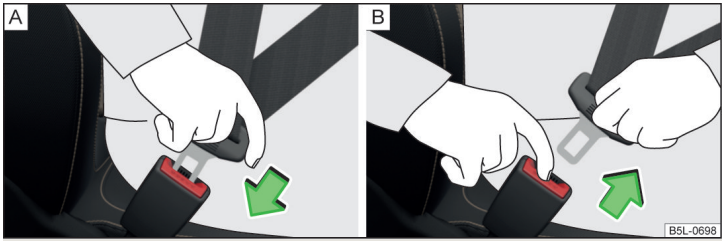


Fig. 18 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 21 first.

Before fastening the belt

› Adjust the headrest properly (does not apply to seats with integrated headrests).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fasten

› Slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 18 – A that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Grip the lock tongue and press the red button in the buckle » Fig. 18 - B, the lock tongue pops out.

› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the webbing rolls up fully.

WARNING

The reel opening for the lock tongue must not be blocked otherwise the lock tongue will not lock into place properly.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision of a certain severity, the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The airbag will only provide optimum protection in conjunction with wearing the seat belt - the airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 41.

System description

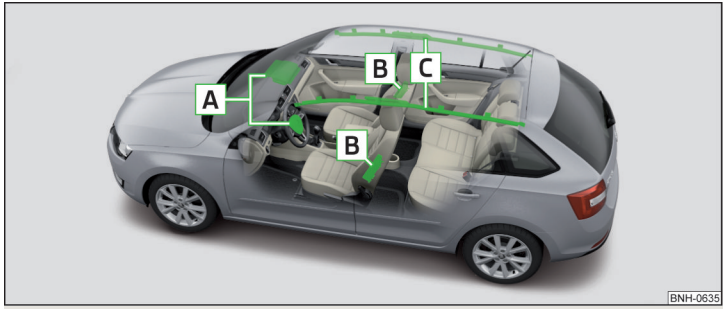


Fig. 19 **Airbag installation points**

Airbag installation points » Fig. 19

- **A** Front airbags
- **B** Side airbags
- **C** Head airbags

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the remaining body parts is thus reduced.

- **Front airbags** - head and upper body. The airbags can be identified by the lettering AIRBAG featured on the steering wheel and on the dash panel on the passenger side.
- **Side airbags** - for the entire upper body (chest, stomach, pelvis) on the side next to the door. The air bags can be identified by a label with the lettering AIRBAG marked on the front seat backrests.
- **Head airbags** - head and neck. The airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster » page 41.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 27.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 27.

Airbag deployment



Fig. 20 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag fills with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbag inflates, smoke is released. This is not a sign of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. The important factors here are the hardness of the object with which the vehicle collides, the angle of impact, vehicle speed etc.

Deceleration during impact plays an important role in the deployment of the airbags. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - position ☞).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

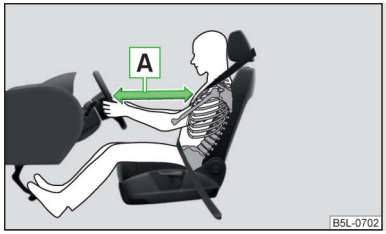


Fig. 21
Safe distance from the steering wheel and dashboard

WARNING

General information
- **The seat belts and the airbag system can only offer proper protection if the driver and passengers are seated properly** » page 18.
- The airbag unleashes enormous force when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or fatalities if the driver and passengers are not seated properly. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 30.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must then be replaced.
- The surface of the steering wheel and the dashboard should only be cleaned with a dry or slightly dampened cloth in the area of the front airbags.

WARNING

Information about the front airbags
- For the driver and passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard » Fig. 21 - A. If this distance is not maintained, the airbag system cannot protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 26, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.

WARNING (Continued)

- No other persons, animals or objects should be placed in front of the occupants in the front seats in the deployment area of the front airbags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dashboard on the passenger side must not be stickered, covered or modified in any way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts and the like) may be mounted near the airbag installation points and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dashboard on the passenger side.

WARNING

Information about for side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on the hooks in the vehicle, do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets. Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.
- No excessive force, e.g. through blows, kicks etc. should be applied to the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side airbags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of a type expressly authorised by ŠKODA AUTO. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation points for the side airbags should be immediately repaired by a specialist company.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 191.

WARNING (Continued)

- No changes of any sort should be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 22 *on page 27* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

A warning light indicates that the airbag has been deactivated » page 41.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- A child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat, in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel » page 28.
- Despite correct adjustment of the driver's seat, the distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest cannot be maintained.
- Additional controls for drivers with a physical disability are installed in the vehicle.
- Special seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags) are installed in the vehicle.

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated at the time of the vehicle being sold, the purchaser must be informed!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

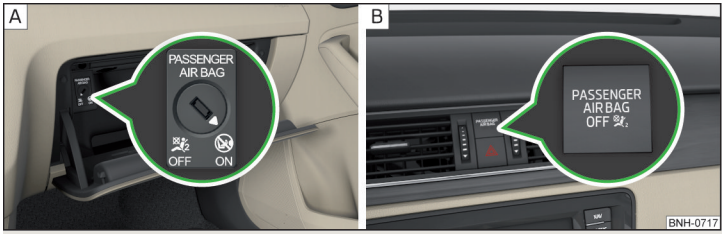


Fig. 22 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

Positions of the key switch » Fig. 22 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light illuminates[1] OFF » Fig. 22 - B

ON The front passenger airbag is activated - the warning light OFF does **not light up** when the ignition is turned on

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› On the radio key, fold the key bit out **fully** ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› On the radio key, fold the key bit out **fully** ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF does not light up after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the OFF warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

[1] The warning light OFF comes on for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, goes out for about 1 second and then comes on again.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident, children should only be transported in child seats!

Please refer to the instructions in this Owner's Manual and the child seat manufacturer's instructions with regard to the installation and use of the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport children on the rear seats. Only transport a child on the passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: large E in a circle with the test number underneath

WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Children might not be capable of leaving the vehicle or helping themselves independently in the event of an emergency. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.

WARNING (Continued)

- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 72. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 1)

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 23 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, or even death.

This warning is also given on stickers that are located in the following places.

- On the passenger sun visor» Fig. 23 - A.
- On the B-column on the front passenger side» Fig. 23 – B.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » !.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned **in front of or at the same height** as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side. Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

! WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- Once a child seat in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be reactivated.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 2)

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 24
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 24.

Child safety and the side airbag

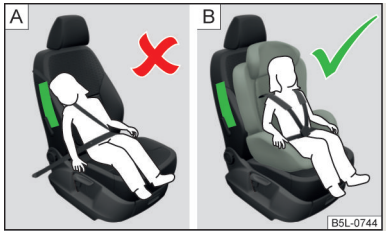


Fig. 25
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 25 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 25 – B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats Outside	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats Outside	Rear seat Centre
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U[a)]
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U[a)]

a) If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system



Fig. 26
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the child in place using the ISOFIX-system » Fig. 26.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX-system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
2 15-25 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22-36 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in ISOFIX in the “Semi-Universal”category. The “Semi-Universal” category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX-system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a ISOFIX child seat with “Universal” approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

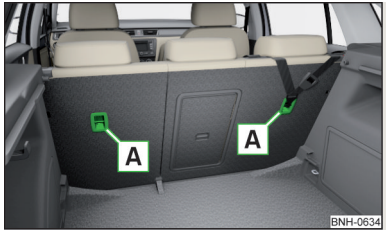


Fig. 27
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is an attachment system that restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes A for attaching the belt of a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the rear seat backrests » Fig. 27.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER-system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats equipped with attachment points with the logo TOP TETHER.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

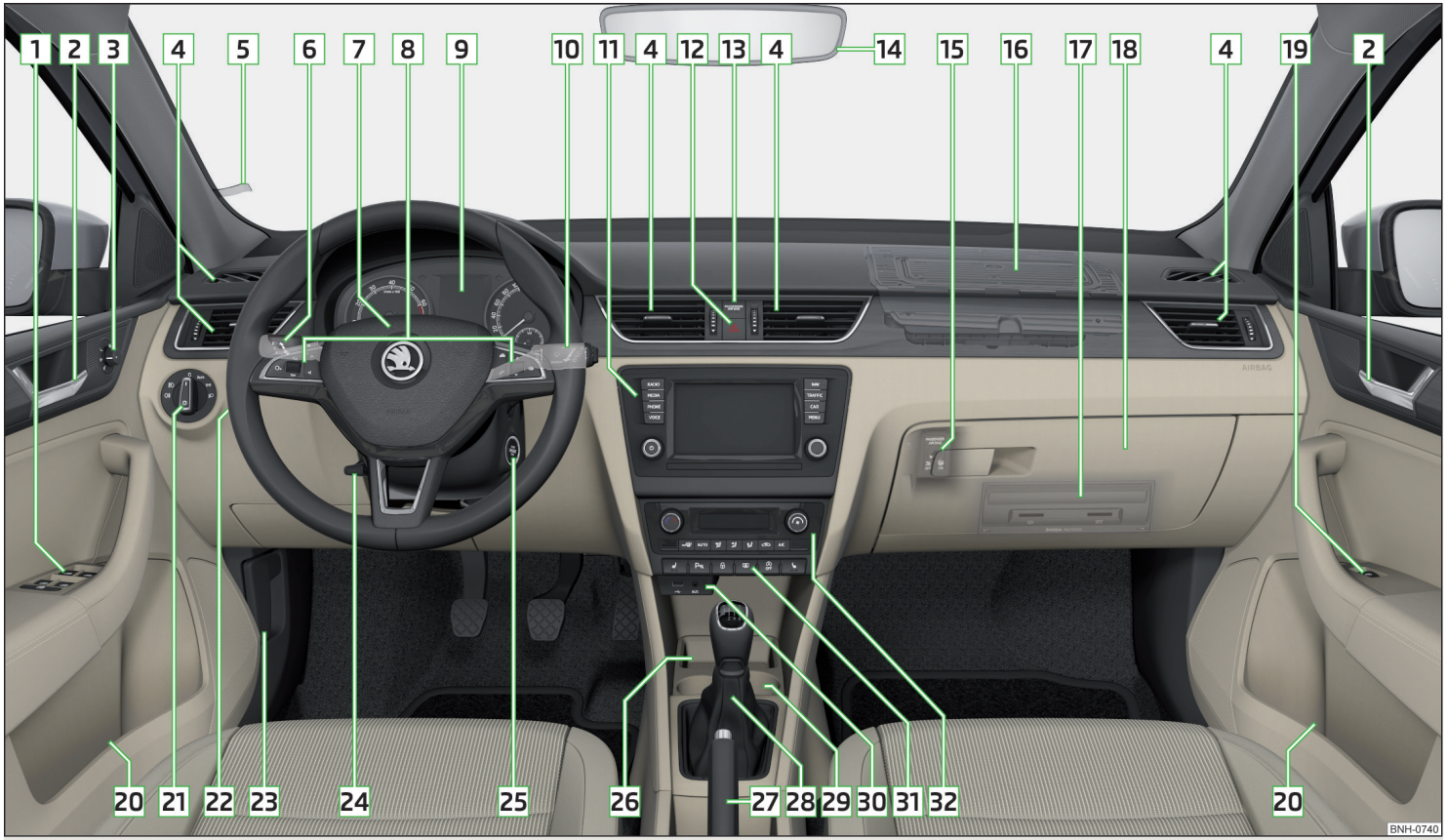


Fig. 28 **Cockpit example for LHD models**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electric power windows — 58
2 Door opening lever — 55
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 69
4 Air outlet vents — 91
5 Ticket holder — 74
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Indicator light and high-beam headlight — 61
- Speed regulating system — 176
- Speed limiter — 177

7 Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag — 24
8 Buttons for operating the information system — 46
9 Instrument cluster — 36
10 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers — 67
- Information system — 46

11 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Storage compartment — 75
- Infotainment — 92

12 Button for hazard warning light system — 64
13 Warning light for the front seat passenger airbag — 27
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 68
15 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 27
16 Front passenger airbag — 24
17 External infotainment module (in the front passenger storage compartment) — 94
18 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 77
19 Electric power window in the front passenger door — 58
20 Storage compartments — 74
21 Light switch — 60
22 Headlight range control (in the dashboard) — 60
23 Bonnet release lever — 199
24 Steering wheel locking lever — 19
25 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock — 160
- Starter button — 160

26 Storage compartment — 74
27 Handbrake lever — 163
28 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 164
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 165

29 Cup holder — 75
30 AUX/USB input — 74
31 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Left seat heating — 72
- Traction control (TCS) — 170
- Parking aid — 171
- Central locking system — 54
- Rear window heater — 66
- START-STOP — 161
- Windscreen heater — 66
- Right seat heating — 72

32 Controls for heating/air conditioning — 88

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout » Fig. 28.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

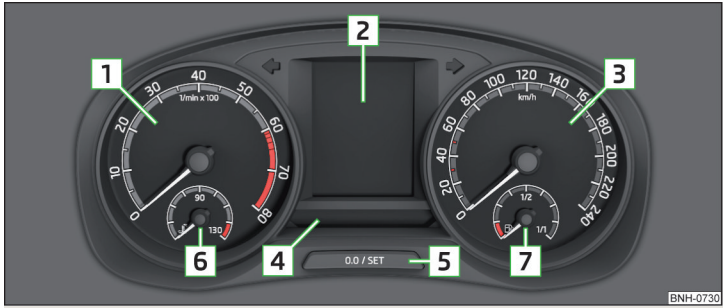


Fig. 29 **Instrument cluster - Version 1**

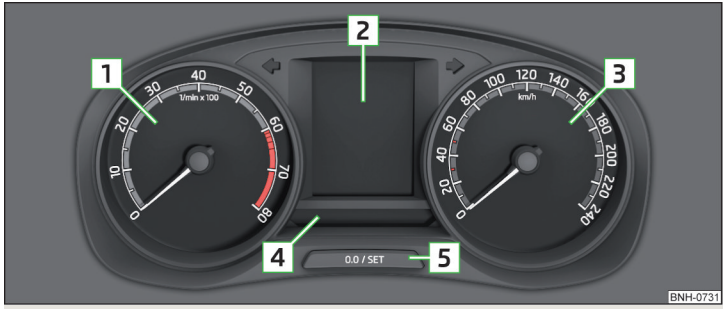


Fig. 30 **Instrument cluster - Version 2**

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 36
- with warning lights » page 37

2 Display » page 46

3 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 37

4 Bar with warning lights » page 37

5 Operation key:
- Set the time » page 46
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 46
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 51

6 Coolant temperature gauge » page 37

7 Fuel gauge » page 37

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

Rev counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 29 *on page 36* or » Fig. 30 *on page 36* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D/S** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 47.

CAUTION

The rev counter pointer may only move into the red area for a short time - otherwise risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge

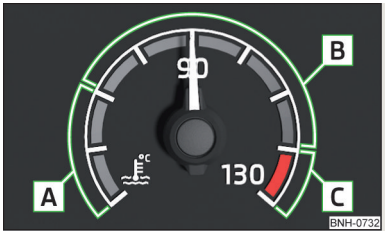


Fig. 31
Coolant temperature gauge

Applies to cars with the instrument cluster variant 1 » Fig. 29 *on page 36*.

The display » Fig. 31 only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range - the pointer is in the range A, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

Operating range - the pointer is in the range B.

High temperature range - the pointer is in the range C. The coolant temperature is too high. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 43.

Fuel gauge

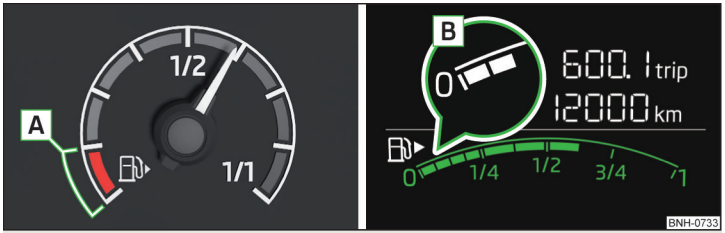


Fig. 32 **Fuel gauge: in the instrument cluster / the display of the instrument cluster**

The display » Fig. 32 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A or B, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 41.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Warning lights

Introduction

	Handbrake	» page 38
	Brake system	» page 38
	Front seat belt warning light	» page 39
	Power steering Steering lock (engine start push-button)	» page 39
	Stabilisation control (ESC) Traction control (ASR)	» page 39
	Traction control (ASR) deactivated	» page 40
	Antilock brake system (ABS)	» page 40
	Rear fog light	» page 40
	Exhaust control system	» page 40
	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	» page 40
EPC	EPC fault light (petrol engine)	» page 40
	Airbag system	» page 41
	Tyre pressure	» page 41

	Fuel reserve	» page 41
	Turning signal system	» page 42
	Trailer turn signal lights	» page 42
	Fog lights	» page 42
	Speed regulating system Speed limiter	» page 42
	Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)	» page 42
	High beam	» page 42
	Automatic gearbox	» page 42
	Rear seat belt warning light	» page 43
	Alternator	» page 43
	Coolant	» page 43
	Engine oil pressure	» page 43
	Engine oil level	» page 44
	Bulb failure	» page 44
	Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)	» page 44
	Windscreen washer fluid level	» page 45
	Headlight assist	» page 45
	START-STOP system	» page 45
	Display of a low temperature	» page 45
	Distance warning (Front Assist)	» page 45
	Advance warning/emergency braking (Front Assist)	» page 45
	Emergency call	» page 45
	Service	» page 45

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The warning lights are at the following locations in the instrument cluster » Fig. 29 *on page 36* or » Fig. 30 *on page 36*.

- Engine revolutions counter **1**
- Display **2**
- Speedometer **3**
- Bar with warning lights **4**

Warning lights in the display

Depending on the importance the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) illuminates along with some of the warning lights in the bar with the warning lights.

! WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 64. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 198.

handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

(P) lights up – the handbrake has been applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

▶ Release the handbrake.

Braking system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

(!) lights up – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▶ Park the vehicle, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - risk of accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of over 25 km/h, the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Power steering/steering lock (engine start with button press)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Fault in the power steering

lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

lights up – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be higher.

- Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
- If the warning light does not go out, stop the vehicle, **do not continue to drive**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- If the warning light does not go out, it is possible to continue driving appropriately. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock defective (engine start push-button)

flashes

Message:	**Steering lock faulty. Stop!** **STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY**

- Park the vehicle, and **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes

Message:	**Steering lock: workshop!** **STEERING WORKSHOP**

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock not unlocked (engine start push-button)

flashes

Message:	**Please move the steering wheel.** **MOVE STEERING WHEEL**

- Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
- If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability Control (ESC)/Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.

lights up – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▶ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

More information about the ESC system » page 169 or TCS system » page 170.

Traction control (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the TCS system is deactivated.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- If the warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 38, *Braking system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode – there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC warning light (petrol)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode – there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

System fault

Illuminates

Message: **Error: airbag**
AIRBAG ERROR

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

lights up for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

lights up for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds

Message: **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**
AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF

! WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Change of tyre pressure values

lights up – there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

▶ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▶ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 206.
▶ Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 210 or use the repair kit » page 213.
▶ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 182.

System fault

flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▶ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents

The illumination of the warning light can have the following reasons.
▶ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▶ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▶ Snow chains are mounted.
▶ A wheel has been changed.

! CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light in the instrument cluster may be delayed or not light up at all.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 7 litres).

▶ Fill up with fuel » page 196.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

flashes – the trailer turn signal lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▶ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the fog lights are switched on.

Speed regulating system/speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is controlled by the cruise control or the speed limiter.

flashes – the speed set with the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Gearbox overheated

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

lights up

Message: **Gearbox overheated. You can drive on.**
GEARBOX OVERHEATED

The gearbox is overheated, which continued driving is possible with appropriately cautious style of driving.

lights up

Message: **Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!**
STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT

▶ **Do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▶ If the warning light does not go out, **do not continue driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

lights up

Message: **Gearbox faulty. Stop the vehicle safely!**
GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP

▶ Park the vehicle, **stop driving!**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

⚠ lights up

Message: **Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.**
GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL
or
Error: gearbox. Speed is limited.
GEARBOX ERROR

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

▶ As the battery discharges while driving, all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) should be switched off.
▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! CAUTION

If in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Coolant level too low

⚠ lights up

Message: **Please check the coolant level. Log book!**
ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
▶ Check the coolant level » page 201.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

▶ Switch off the ignition.
▶ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, **stop driving!**

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

⚠ lights up

Message: **Engine overheat. Stop! Observe log book.**
ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
▶ Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

⚠ flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
▶ Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ lights up

Message: **Please add engine oil. ADD OIL**

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ lights up

Message: **Please reduce oil level. OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ lights up

Message: **Oil sensor: please visit workshop. OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP**

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

⚠ lights up – one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Diesel particle filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates and burns the soot particles from the exhaust.

⚠ lights up – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic transmission: position **D / S**).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1,800-2,500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

▶ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or the like.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

⚠ lights up – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid » page 200.

Headlight assist

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

illuminates – headlight assist is activated » page 62, *Headlight assist (Light Assist)*.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicate the status of the START-STOP system» page 161.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

❄ lights up – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! You should therefore not only rely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Front Assist

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

lights up – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 178.

Advance warning / Emergency braking (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – the system has recognized the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre » page 178.

Emergency call

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

SOS ⚠ lights up – there is a fault in the emergency call system.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 38 first.

lights up – information regarding a service appointment that is due » page 51, *Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval.*

Information system

Driver information system

Display in the instrument cluster

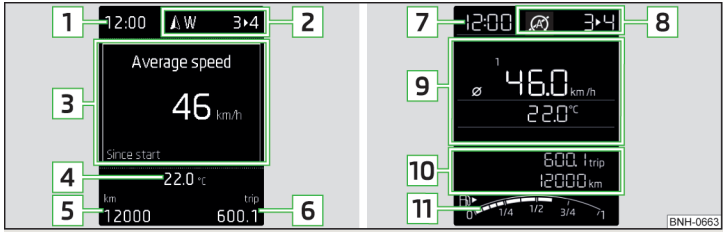


Fig. 33 **Display types: MAXI DOT/Segment Display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 33.

1 Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control
2 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Compass display
3 Driving data (multifunction display)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm
Service interval display
4 Outside temperature
5 Cruise control/speed limiter
Total distance travelled
6 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
7 Time
8 Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
9 Outside temperature
Warning lights
Driving data (multifunction display)
10 Total distance travelled
Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Cruise control/speed limiter
Service interval display
Information messages
11 Fuel gauge

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press button A » Fig. 34 *on page 46*.

Setting the time

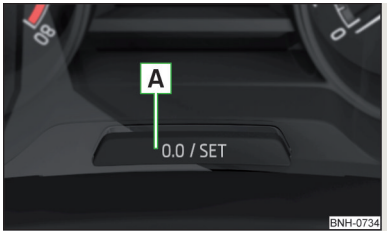


Fig. 34
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 34 until the **time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the initial setting.

Gear recommendation

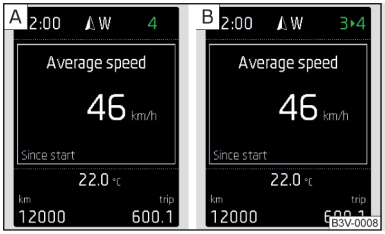


Fig. 35
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

Display » Fig. 35

A Optimal gear engaged

B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶ 4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3rd to 4th gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations (e.g. when overtaking).

Vehicle status

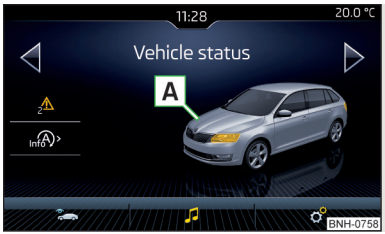


Fig. 36
Vehicle status

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

As long as the faults are not rectified the messages are always shown. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

The vehicle status can be displayed in the Infotainment in menu CAR → → → **Vehicle status**.

In the screen, information regarding vehicle condition or function of the tyre pressure monitor is displayed.

› Using the function surfaces ◁ ▷, select the *Vehicle status* menu item.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 36

A Vehicle representation (the zones of the vehicle are shown in different colours, corresponding to any warning messages that occur. The warning messages are displayed once you touch the “vehicle”)

✓/⚠ No message/warning messages relating to vehicle status and the number (if there is only one message, one warning message text is displayed)

Display information about the status of the START-STOP system

/ Activation/deactivation of messages relating to the START-STOP system messages in another screen display

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

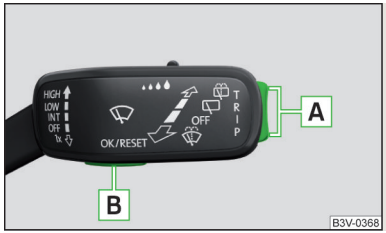


Fig. 37
Buttons on the control lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - select data / Setting values

B **Press** - show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move to the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu

B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 38 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch on/off voice control

A **Turn** - sets the volume
Press - sound on / off

▷ Skip to next track/station

◁ Switch to previous track/station

Display the assistance systems menu

Press - the *Telephone* menu, accept/end the call; call selected contact
Hold - repeat last call; reject call

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press - show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a previous level in the menu

B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

The units can be set in the Infotainment in the CAR → → **Units** menu.

Information Overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

Average fuel consumption - is calculated continuously since the last clearing of the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

Current fuel consumption - when the vehicle is stationary or moving slowly, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (in models in some countries the following appears --,- km/l).

Oil temperature - if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the **---** symbols are displayed.

Warning when the preset speed is exceeded - allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Current Speed - digital speedometer.

Average speed - value constantly recalculated, for distance since last clearing the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Distance driven - distance driven since the memory was last cleared.

Driving time - driving time since last clearing the memory.

Coolant temperature - if the coolant temperature is in the range 70-120 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached. If the temperature is below 70 ° C, high engine speeds and straining the engine should be avoided. If the temperature is above 120 ° C, the warning light lights up the instrument cluster » page 43.

Infotainment display

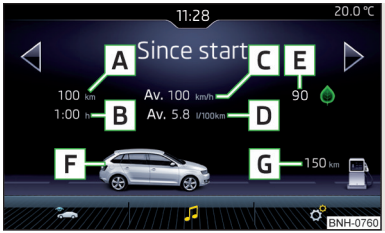


Fig. 39
Driving data

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface → **Driving data**.

Screen display » Fig. 39

- A Distance travelled
- B Driving time
- C Average speed
- D Average fuel consumption
- E Transit point rating (**DriveGreen** Function)
- F Graphic fuel level display (if the estimated range is less than 300 km, the vehicle starts to approach the symbol)
- G Approximate range

Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ to select one of the following presets.

▸ *Since start* - Driving data for the individual trip
▸ *Long-term* - Long-term driving data
▸ *Since refuel* - Data since refuelling

Warning at when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the speed stored in the memory, the speed limit is reset.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

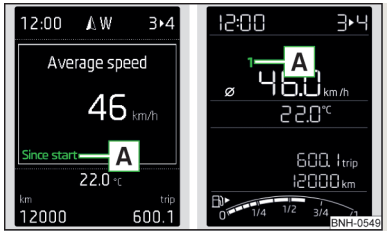


Fig. 40
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M) / Segment display (S)

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A » Fig. 40.

Since start (M) or “1” (S)
Drive data is stored from when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition, new data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (M) and “2” (S)
The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (M) or “3” (S)
The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› For the **Storage choice**, repeatedly confirm the selected indication and select the desired memory.
› For **Deleting the memory** for the selected information, hold down the button confirming the specification.

The following driving data is stored in different memory banks.
▸ Average fuel consumption
▸ Distance travelled
▸ Average speed
▸ Driving time

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The instrument cluster display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 47.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 48
- **Assist systems** » page 51
- **Navigation** » page 50
- **Audio** » page 50
- **Telephone** » page 51;
- **Vehicle** » page 47

Note
- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can be set in the Infotainment » page 102, *Infotainment language settings* or » page 109, *Infotainment language settings*.
- For vehicles without Infotainment, the display language can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Menu item Navigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

▸ Driving recommendations
▸ Compass
▸ Last destinations

Menu item Audio

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio
▸ Currently playing station (name/frequency).
▸ The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM 3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
▸ List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
▸ TP traffic announcements.

Media

▶ Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu Telephone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Symbols in the display

- Telephone battery charge (this function is only supported by some mobile phones)
- Signal strength (this function is only supported by some mobile phones)
- A telephone connected to the Infotainment system
- Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
- Switch-off microphone

Apple CarPlay

An external device connected to the Infotainment system via Apple CarPlay can be operated via the multifunction steering wheel as well as via menus in the instrument cluster display.

The following symbols are displayed in the **Telephone** menu option.

- Answer the incoming call
- Reject incoming call / end call
- Activate / deactivate microphone (applies for the infotainment Swing)

Menu item Assist systems

In the **Assist systems** menu item, the Front Assist system can be activated/deactivated.

Service intervals

Introduction

Compliance with the service intervals is of crucial importance for the service life and value retention of the vehicle. Never exceed the service date.

The specialist garage will inform you about the type of service interval, the option to change it, and the service scope.

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will notify you when a service is due.

Proof of service

A specialist garage will confirm the corresponding service record in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

We recommend that you always print out the respective service record.

Note

The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO warranty terms or other binding agreements.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

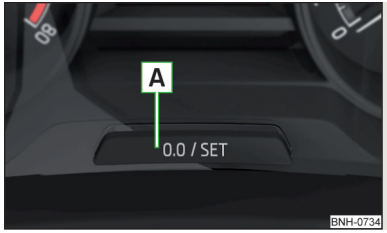


Fig. 41
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 41 until the **Service** menu item is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

Information regarding the remaining kilometres and days until the next service appointment can also be displayed in Infotainment in menu CAR → → **Service**.

Service messages

Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after the ignition is switched on.

Once the service interval **is reached**, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message:

Resetting the service interval display

Have the display reset by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display can cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 55.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle doors have been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the key grooves clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

Unlocking/locking with the key via the lock cylinder

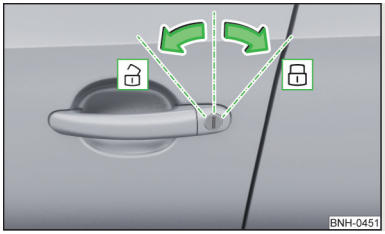


Fig. 42
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 42

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

! CAUTION

If the locking cylinder is provided with a cap, the cap must be removed before unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » page 219.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

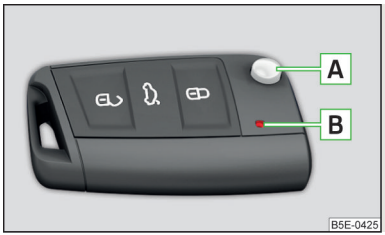


Fig. 43
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 43

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Button to lock/unlock the boot lid
- A Button for folding out/folding in the key bit
- B Battery status warning light - if the warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged.

Unlocking / locking the boot lid

By **pressing lightly** on the button the lid is unlocked.

By **pressing down** on the button the lid is unlocked and unlatched (partly-opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period of time after which the flap is locked can be set » page 58.

! CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superimposition from transmitters close to the car.
- The range of the remote control key is about 30 m. The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at a distance of less than approximately 3 m away » page 219.

Locking/unlocking - KESSY

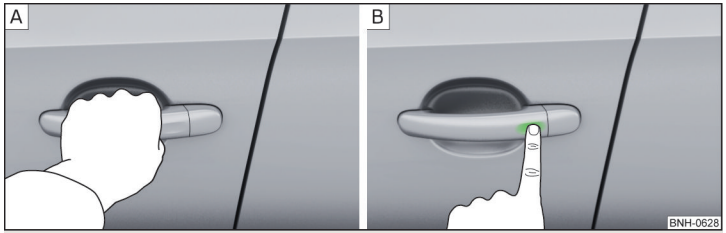


Fig. 44 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** » Fig. 44 - A the vehicle.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 44 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

The KESSY system is activated when the vehicle is locked with the button on the key » page 54.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed only after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Deactivating KESSY

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› **To check the deactivation**, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle. The door must remain locked.

The KESSY system is activated again automatically after the vehicle is unlocked.

Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button



Fig. 45
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.
✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.
✓ All doors are closed.

› To **lock/unlock**, press the » Fig. 45 button.

Locking is indicated by illumination of the symbol in the button.

The following applies after locking.
▸ Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
▸ The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING
Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

SafeLock prevents opening the doors from inside as well as window operation. This makes an attempted break-in to the vehicle more difficult.

Activating
SafeLock is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!

CHECK SAFELOCK

Activation display
When SafeLock is activated, the warning light in the driver's door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Deactivating
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 57.

The warning light in the driver door flashes rapidly for about 2 seconds, then goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The SafeLock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

The following functions of central locking can be individually adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Opening and closing**.

All doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km / h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Opening/closing the door

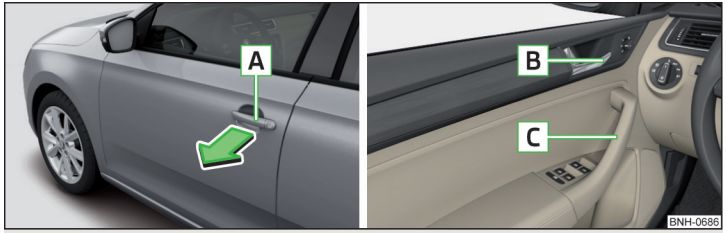


Fig. 46 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 52 first.

› To **open from the outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 46.
› To **open from the inside** pull the door opening lever B and push the door away from you.

› To the **lock from the inside**, grab the handle C and close the door.

WARNING

- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst the vehicle is in motion - risk of fatality!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

Child safety lock



Fig. 47 **Rear door: Child safety system switch on / off**

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching on and off

› To **turn on** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position » Fig. 47.
› To **turn off** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position .

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 52 first.

Synchronising the remote control

If the buttons on the remote control key have been depressed several times beyond the effective range of the equipment, or the battery has been replaced in the remote control key and the vehicle cannot be unlocked with the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

In the event of a failure in the central locking system, the vehicle doors and the boot lid can emergency locked or unlocked » page 219.

Failure of the system KESSY

If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery

If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 219.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, check that all doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

Note

The alarm system has its own power source, whose service life is 5 years. In order to ensure functionality of the alarm system, we recommend that you get the alarm checked after this time by a specialist garage.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.

- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 48
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

These functions should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivation

› Switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.
› Press the OFF button on the centre column on the driver side » Fig. 48; the OFF symbol lights up in the button.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Safelock is switched off during deactivation.

CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Boot lid

Introduction

WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

Opening / closing the boot lid

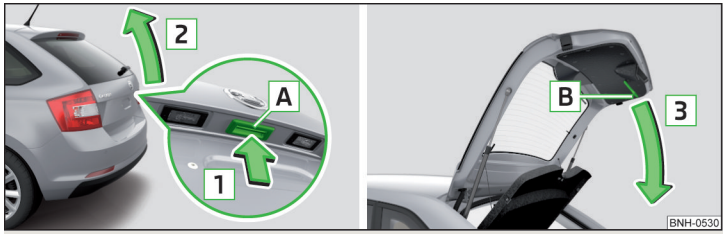


Fig. 49 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

› To **open** the boot lid, press button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 49.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 49 is disabled when starting off or driving at a speed of over 5 km/h. The button is reactivated when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, then the boot lid is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Window operation

Introduction

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and in a controlled manner. Otherwise, you may cause considerable crushing injuries to yourself or fellow passengers.
- Power windows in the driver's door and the rear doors are equipped with a force limiter » page 59. If there is an obstacle (e.g. If a body part gets trapped), the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical windows

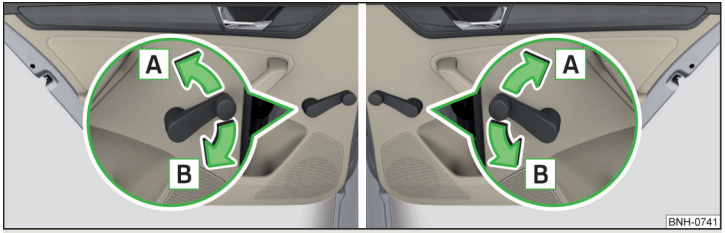


Fig. 50 **Window Operation: Left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 50.

› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric power windows

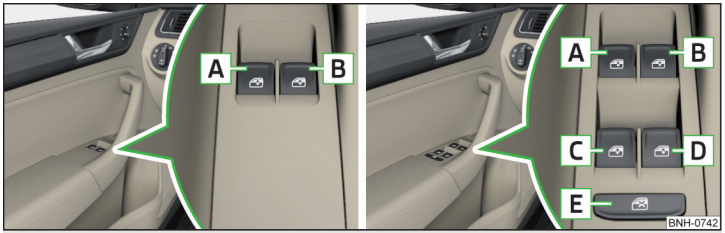


Fig. 51 **Buttons for window-openers: Version 1/version 2**



Fig. 52
Button of the window lifter on the passenger side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the front windows - **Variant 1** or the front and rear windows - **Variant 2** can be operated by pushing/pulling the door buttons in the driver's door » Fig. 51.

The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors (variant 2) are operated via the button in each door.

Power window buttons » Fig. 51

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Right rear door
E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

Opening/closing windows

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

The driver's window may be automatically opened / closed fully by pushing or pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Deactivating/activating buttons in the rear doors

› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons are deactivated, the warning light lights up in button E.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

! WARNING

The front passenger window with the electric window **has no** force limiter. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

Operational faults

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanism has cooled down.

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, automatic opening/closing of the window can be deactivated. In this case, the system must be **activated** as follows.

Activating window operation

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Lights and visibility

Light

Introduction

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

For the basic position of the light switch, use position **AUTO**.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short time.

Operating the lights

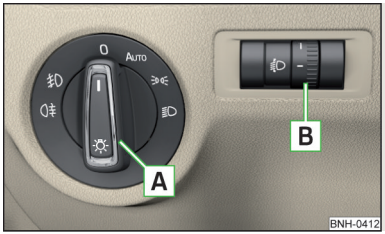


Fig. 53
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

To **switch the lights on/off**, turn the A » Fig. 53 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Switching the light on/off automatically » page 62
Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 64
Switch on low beam

Depending on the vehicle load, adjust the **headlight range** by turning the controller B » Fig. 53 to the following positions.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions - otherwise risk of accident.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off and the parking lights will come on. Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function . The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the KESSY system, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running light (hereinafter referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment
The function can be deactivated/activated in the Infotainment system in menu CAR → → **Light**.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator/main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push **down** and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until you hear a signal (about 3 s).

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator/main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push **up** and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until you hear a signal (about 3 s).

WARNING

Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

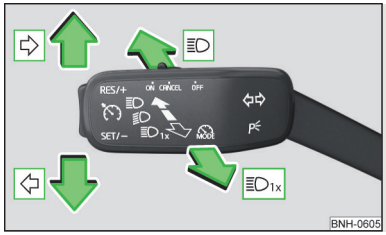


Fig. 54
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Control stalk positions » Fig. 54
⇨ Switch on right turn signal
⇦ Switch on left turn signal
≡D Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position)
≡D!x Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be used even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically, depending on the steering angle after completing the turn.

Comfort flashing
When the operating lever is pressed lightly up or down, the indicator in question flashes three times.

If, during the comfort signalling, the operating lever is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

Comfort flashing can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light**.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving light control



Fig. 55
Light switch: position AUTO

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 55 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering AUTO illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (referred to as function in the following)
The low beam lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The function is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation
The following functions can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light**.

- ▶ Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
- ▶ Automatic driving light control during rain

! WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control (position **AUTO**) only acts as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the prevailing light conditions.

! CAUTION

Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not cover the sensor - the system function can be disrupted.

Headlight assist (Light Assist)



Fig. 56 **Installation location of the sensor / system on/off**

The system automatically switches the high beam on/off in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lit village).

The main beam on/off is controlled by a sensor or » Fig. 56.

Activating / Deactivating the system takes place in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light** → **Light Assist**.

Conditions for the system function

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h or for some countries over 40 km/h.
- ✓ The windscreen is clean in the sensor area.

Switch on the system

› Push the lever into the sprung position A » Fig. 56 The following indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster display.

Switch off the system

› If the high beam **is** switched on automatically, move the lever into the sprung position B. The warning light goes out. The high beam turns off.

› If the high beam is **is not** switched on automatically, move the lever into the sprung position A. The warning light goes out. The high beam turns on.

The high beam switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h (but the system remains switched on).

If there is a **system fault**, an error message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

The system is used only for support, thus the driver is not released from his obligation to manually adjust the main or low beam according to the given ambient conditions (e.g. in unfavourable lighting and weather conditions, as when passing poorly lit road users, if necessary, when the area in front of the sensor is covered by an obstacle).

CAUTION

Do not cover the sensor and keep the front screen clean - system functionality can be impaired.

Fog lights/rear fog light

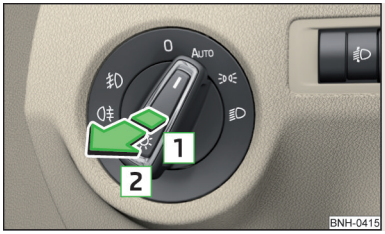


Fig. 57
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog lights

Switching on the fog lights / rear fog lights is possible if the following conditions apply.

✓ The lights switch is in position AUTO, or » Fig. 57.

› To **switch on** the **fog lights**, pull the light switch in position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **switch on** the **rear fog light**, pull the light switch to position 2, the indicator light will light up in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not fitted with **fog lights**, the **rear fog light** is switched on by pulling out the light switch to the only possible setting.

The fog lights/rear fog light are **switched off** in the reverse order.

Note

If an accessory is connected to the trailer socket, the rear fog lamp does not light up on the vehicle.

Fog lights with CORNER function

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering or steering), if the following conditions are fulfilled.

✓ The turn signal is turned on or the front wheels are severely locked (in the event of conflict between the two versions, has turn signal has the higher priority).
✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position AUTO.

The two functions can be **activated/deactivated and adjusted** in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Light**.

CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is detected by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror or in the control panel. Do not cover the sensor - the system function can be disrupted.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 58
Button for hazard warning light system

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button» Fig. 58.

When switched on, the turn signal lights and the warning light ⚠ buttons all flash at the same time as the warning lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning light system is switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle (applies with active comfort flashing).

Parking light

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light ⊱ on one side
› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨ or ⇦ until it stops» Fig. 54 *on page 61*.

The parking light is turned on on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Switching on the side light on both sides ≡D
› Turn the ignition on and turn the light switch to position ≡D » page 60.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the car.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible warning is turned off.

! CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically.

Driving abroad

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, it is necessary to have the headlights adapted by a specialist garage.

Interior lighting

Introduction

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition off (or after a door is opened),the lights will automatically switch off after approximately 10 minutes.

Front interior lights

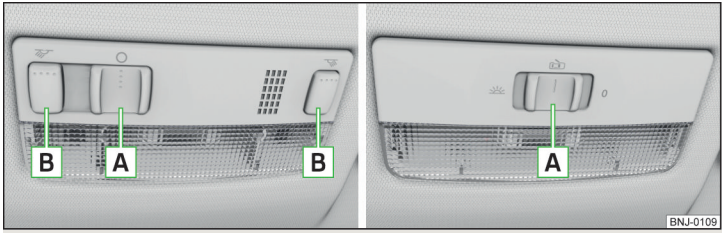


Fig. 59 **Operation of the front lights: Variant 1/Variant 2**

Positions of the sliding light switch A » Fig. 59

Switch on

0 Switch off

Automatic operation

Switch on/off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 59

Reading lamp left

Reading lamp right

Automatic operation – position

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior lights



Fig. 60 **Interior lights at the rear: Version 1/version 2**

Variant 1: operation (by pressing the switch A) » Fig. 60

Switching on and off

The rear light **is operated automatically with the front light**.

- When the front lighting is **switched on**, the rear lighting also turns on automatically.
- When the front lighting is **switched off**, the rear lighting can be switched on/off as required.

Variant 2: operation (by moving the spreader disc B) » Fig. 60

Switch on

0 Switch off

Automatic operation (the light is switched on/off automatically together with the front light)

Front LED interior light

Depending on the equipment, the LED lighting illuminates the storage compartments in the centre console, in the doors and in the footwell.

The **switching on** of the lighting takes place automatically after opening the door; **switching off** occurs automatically after the locking of the vehicle or 30 seconds after the closing of the door.

The brightness level of the lighting when the low beam or parking lights are switched on can be adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → → → **Ambient lighting**.

Visibility

Introduction

WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visor that could restrict the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or in a collision.

Windscreen and rear window heater



Fig. 61
Buttons for the windscreen and rear window heater

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the windscreen and rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

Buttons for the heating (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 61

- Switching on/off the windscreen heater
- Switch on/off the rear window heater

When the heater is switched on, a lamp illuminates inside the button.

The heating automatically switches off after ten minutes.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 203, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button, the heater will not function due to low battery.

Front sun visors

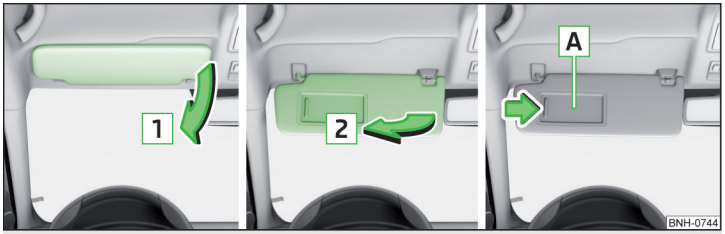


Fig. 62 **Fold down visor/flip up visor/make-up mirror**

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 62

1. Swivel cover towards the windscreen
2. Swivel cover towards the door

A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)

Sunshade of the panoramic roof



Fig. 63
Open sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The sunshade of the panoramic roof can be **opened** manually in the direction of arrow or **closed** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 63.

WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

The windshield wipers and the windshield washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 220.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor.
- Carefully separate frozen windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and free from snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is a risk of damage to the windscreen by the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the wiper arm is raised from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet by the wiper arms.

Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer jets can be heated automatically after starting the engine.

Front wipers and washers



Fig. 64
Operating the windscreen wipers and washer system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

HIGH High-speed wiping

LOW Slow-speed wiping

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

OFF Wipers and washers off

1x Single wipe of the windscreen (spring-loaded position)

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position INT – by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

Spraying and wiping the disc (spring-loaded position) - after releasing the operating lever the wipers continue for another 1 to 3 strokes

Automatic windscreen wiping during rain can be **activated/deactivated** in the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Rear wipers and washer/Reversing camera cleaning system

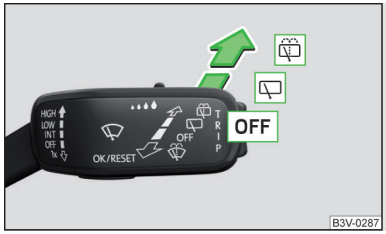


Fig. 65
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

- Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 1 to 3 wiper strokes
  Spraying the rear view camera (sprung position)
- Rear screen wiping

OFF Wipers and washers off

Automatic rear wiper
If the windscreen wipers switched on and reverse gear selected, is selected, the regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place automatically.

This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers** or at a specialist garage (depending on the equipment),

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

Headlights are cleaned under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -11° C to +36° C.

The headlights are cleaned after the first and every subsequent tenth spray on the windscreen. The spray interval can be adjusted by a specialist garage (maximum after every twentieth spraying of the windscreen).

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

! WARNING
Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, they make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the interior mirror whenever possible, for assessing the distances to the vehicles following behind.

! WARNING
- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Interior mirror dimming

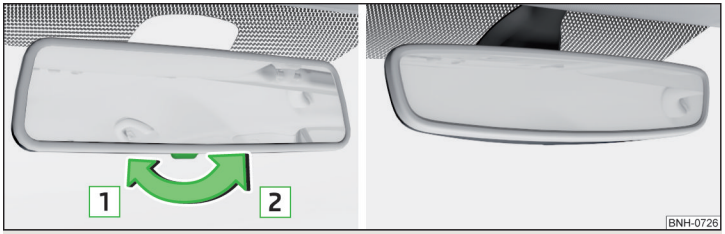


Fig. 66 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 66
1 Basic mirror position (not darkened)
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming
The mirror dimming » Fig. 66 is automatically controlled after the engine start. ▸

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - it could cause an accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

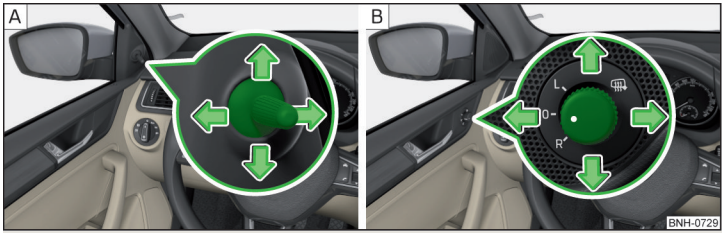


Fig. 67 **Exterior mirror operation: mechanical / electrical**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The outer mirror surfaces are (depending on the vehicle specification) mechanically or electrically adjustable.

› To **adjust** the mirror surface, move the knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 67.

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by carefully pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

The knob for the electrically adjustable mirrors can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 67 - B.

L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror

0 Switch off mirror control

R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror

Exterior mirror heater (only operates when the engine is running)

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The mirror can be manually folded in towards the side window. To put it back into its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – otherwise risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Adjusting the front seats

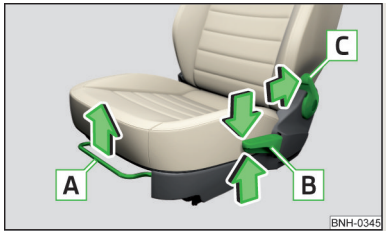


Fig. 68
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)

B Adjusting height of seat

C Adjust the tilt of the backrest (during adjustment, release the backrest and select the required tilt using your back)

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Armrest setting



Fig. 69
Adjusting the armrest

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow A into one of the locking positions » Fig. 69.

› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A past the stop and then fold down again.

Rear seats

Seat backrests

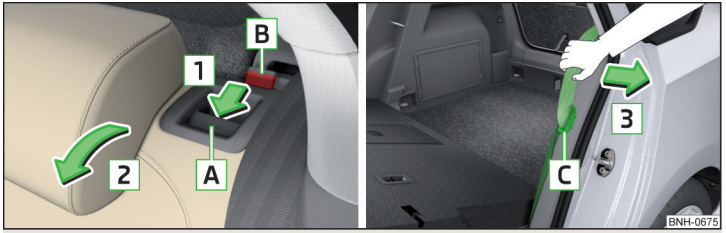


Fig. 70 **Folding the seat backrest forwards/standby position of the seat belt**

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the seat backrests. If necessary, remove the rear head restraints » page 72.

Folding forward

› Push the headrest into the seat backrest until it clicks into position.

› Insert the belt buckle latching element C of the seat belt into the opening on the side panel - ready position » Fig. 70.
› Push the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2.

In the **undivided** seat back, insert the buckle tongues C into the two outer belts and the press the release handles A on both sides of the seat back simultaneously.

Folding backwards

› Pull the seat belt C for the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 70.
› Raise the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2 until the release handle A audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. After folding back the seat back, the release handles A should audibly click into place on both sides of the seat back and the red mark B should not be visible on either side of the seat back.

WARNING

- The seat backs in occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.

CAUTION

When moving the seat backrest, the seat belts should not be trapped - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

Fold down armrest

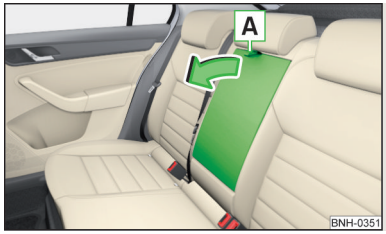


Fig. 71
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be **folded down** by pulling on the loop A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71.

Headrests

Introduction

Note

In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Adjusting the height



Fig. 72 **Setting the height of the headrest**

Adjustment of the head rest heights is the same in the front and rear.

› Grasp the headrest and move **upwards** in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 72. ▸

› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

CAUTION

If the tablet holder adapter is secured to the guide rods of the front headrests » page 80, do not push the headrests down to the stop – risk of damaging the headrests.

Removing/inserting the front headrests

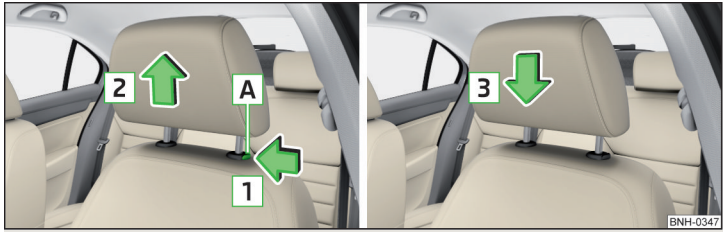


Fig. 73 **Removing/inserting the front headrest**

› To **remove**, hold the locking button A in direction of arrow 1 and remove the support in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 73.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 3 until the locking button clicks into place.

Removing/inserting the rear headrests

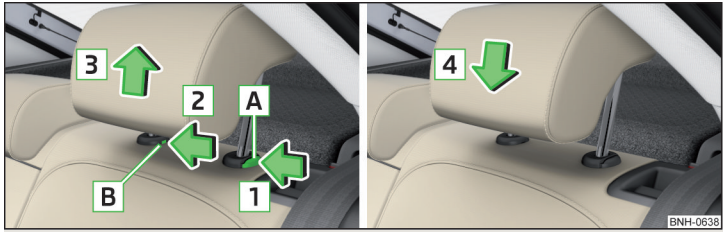


Fig. 74 **Removing/inserting the rear headrest**

› To **remove**, hold the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, and at the same time, use a flat screwdriver (with a max. width of 5 mm) to push the locking button in the opening B in the direction of arrow 2 and remove the headrest in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 74.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 4 until the locking button clicks into place.

Seat heaters

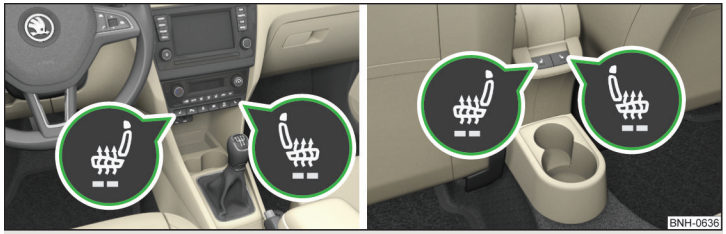


Fig. 75 **Buttons for heating the front /rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electronically.

Seat heating buttons » Fig. 75

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

› To **turn on** the heater at maximum heat (level 2), press button or .

By repeatedly pressing the button, the heat is turned down until it is completely **switched off**. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

If you are sensitive to pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not switch on the heating for unoccupied seats.
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have objects on them (e.g. a child seat, bag or similar).
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have seat covers or protective covers on them.

Note

- If the heaters are set to their highest intensity (level 2), they are automatically switched down to level 1 after 10 minutes.
- If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 203, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Useful features

Passenger compartment features

Introduction

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - they could cause an accident!
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat, except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments should be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened lid or through the loose objects in the compartment.
- Make sure no objects protrude from the storage compartments - danger of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible loads for the storage compartments and pockets - risk of injury and risk of damage to the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like should only be stored in the ashtray - danger of fire/burns!
- The storage compartments, multimedia holder and waste container are not a substitute for the ashtray and must not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

Do not place any large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Ticket holder



Fig. 76
Ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The ticket holder is provided for the attachment of e.g. parking tickets.

Storage compartments in the doors

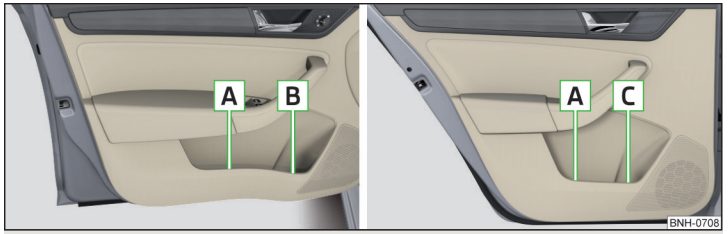


Fig. 77 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 77

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

! WARNING

Storage compartment A » Fig. 77 is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not stick out – danger of restricting the effectiveness of the side airbags.

Storage compartments in centre console



Fig. 78 **Non-lockable compartment, front / rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The non-lockable storage compartment is located in the front centre console A and in the rear centre console B » Fig. 78.

USB and AUX inputs

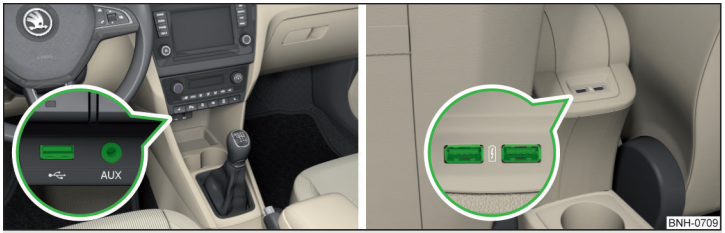


Fig. 79 **Front USB and AUX input/rear USB inputs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The USB and AUX inputs are located above the storage compartment at the front of the centre console » Fig. 79.

The USB inputs (marked with ⚡) are also located in the rear centre console, depending on the equipment.

The USB input in the front centre console can be used for charging and for data transmission. The USB inputs in the rear centre console can be used only for charging.

Information for using » page 120, *USB input* and » page 121, *AUX input*.

Storage compartment in the dashboard



Fig. 80
Storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage compartment is located in the middle part of the panel » Fig. 80.

Cup holders



Fig. 81 **Cup holder at the front/rear**

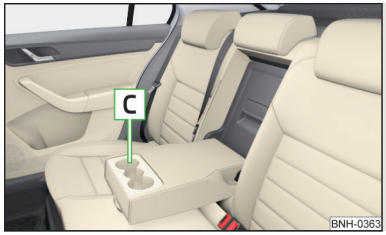


Fig. 82
Cup holder in rear armrest

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The cup holders are located in the front centre console A, the rear centre console B » Fig. 81 and in the rear armrest C » Fig. 82.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

! WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Waste container

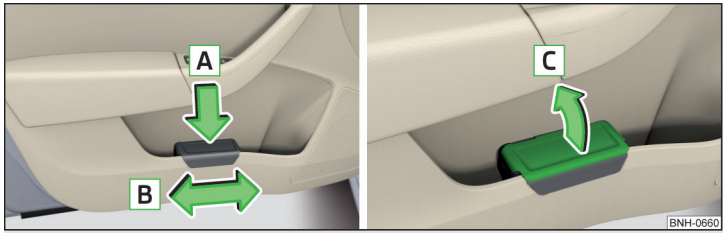


Fig. 83 **Waste container: inserting and moving/opening**

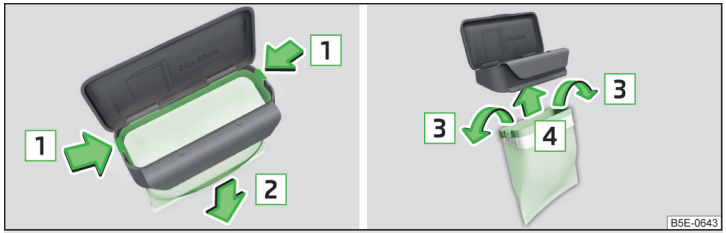


Fig. 84 **Replacing bags**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the storage compartment in the door.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 83.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 83.

Open/close waste container

› Lift the lid in the direction of arrow C » Fig. 83.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 84.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Place the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly on the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

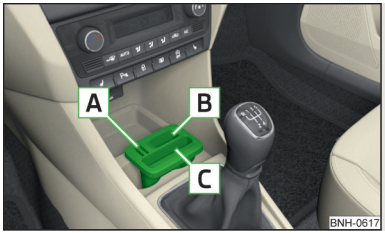


Fig. 85
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 85

A Storage compartment for storing two coins
B Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Storage compartment in the front armrest



Fig. 86 **Storage compartment / open storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

› To **open** the armrest in the area A, grasp and lift the lid » Fig. 86.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

Glasses storage box

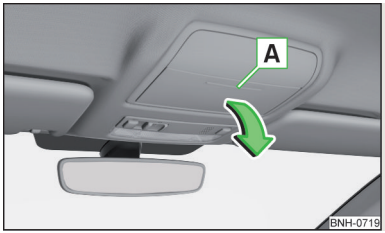


Fig. 87
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

› To **open**, press on the lid of the glasses compartment in the area A. The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! CAUTION

▪ Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
▪ The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

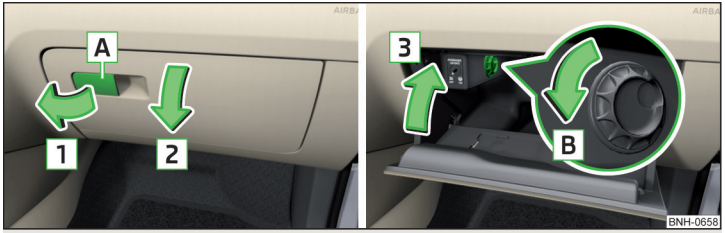


Fig. 88 **Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light (this is illuminated when the parking lights / low beam are switched on), a bottle holder with a content of max. 1 l as well as an air outlet.

Storage compartment

› To **open**, pull the handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 88.
› To **close**, swivel the cover in the direction of arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.

Air supply

› To **open**, turn the dial in the direction of arrow B until it stops » Fig. 88.
› To **close**, turn the dial against the direction of arrow B until it stops.

The temperature of the storage compartment supplied with air is dependent on the setting in the air conditioning.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 3 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella



Fig. 89
Storage compartment for the umbrella

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage compartment under the passenger seat » Fig. 89 is used for storing an umbrella.

Clothes hook

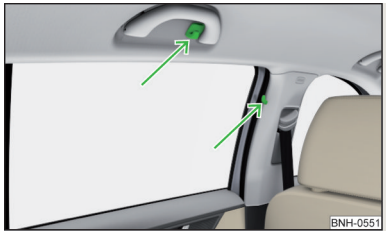


Fig. 90
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 90.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up - danger of injury.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes - there is a risk of restricting the effectiveness of head airbags and a danger of injury from the hanger.
- Make sure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impede your vision.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats



Fig. 91
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The map pockets are intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc.

Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats



Fig. 92
Storage pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 73 first.

The storage pockets are located on the inside of the front seats » Fig. 92 and are used to store small and light objects (e.g. mobile phones).

The maximum permissible load of each of the pockets is 150 g.

Electrical sockets

Introduction

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - they could cause an accident!
- Stow all devices safely during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The 12-volt sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts - otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

12-volt socket

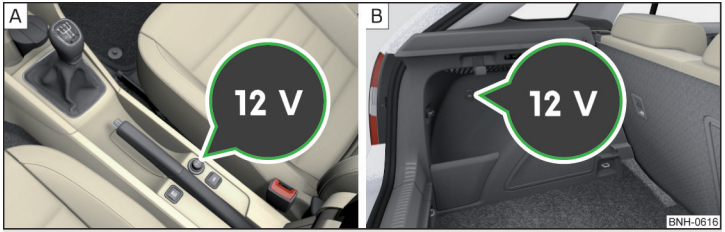


Fig. 93 **12-volt socket cover: in the front centre console/in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 78 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover from the socket » Fig. 93 - A or open the cover of the socket » Fig. 93 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

The ashtray can be used for disposing of ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like.

WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Ashtray



Fig. 94 **Removing the front/rear ashtray**

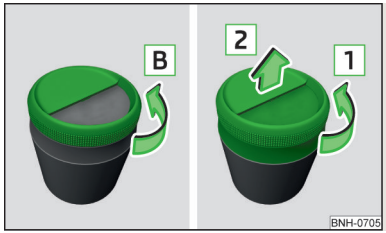


Fig. 95 **Opening/disassembling the ashtray**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Removable ashtray

› **Remove** the ashtray in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 94. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.
› To **open** the ashtray, turn the top part of the cover in the direction of arrow B » Fig. 95. **Closing** takes place in reverse order.
› To **disassemble** turn the entire cover in the direction 1 until it stops and remove in direction of arrow 2. **Assembly** takes place in reverse order.

Cigarette lighter

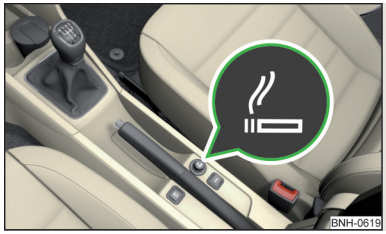


Fig. 96
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 96.
› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

! WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - can cause burns.

i Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Tablet holder

Introduction

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the holder.

The maximum permissible load of the holder is 750 g.

! CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests

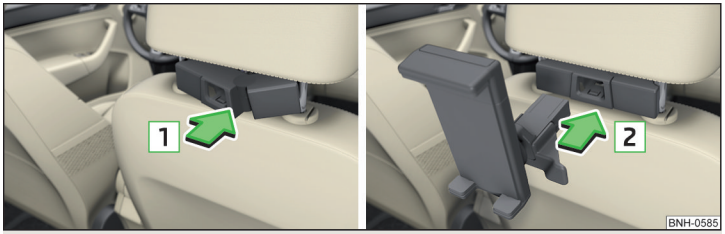


Fig. 97 **Inserting: adapter/holder**

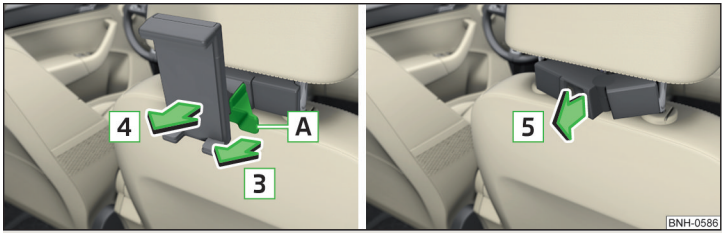


Fig. 98 **Removing: holder/adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 80 first.

› To **insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 97 » !.
› Clip the holder into the adapter in the direction of arrow 2.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder out of the adapter in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 98.
› Press the adapter and remove it from the guide rods of the head rest in the direction of arrow 5.

! WARNING

Be careful with the adapter – otherwise there is a risk of finger injury.

Handling the holder

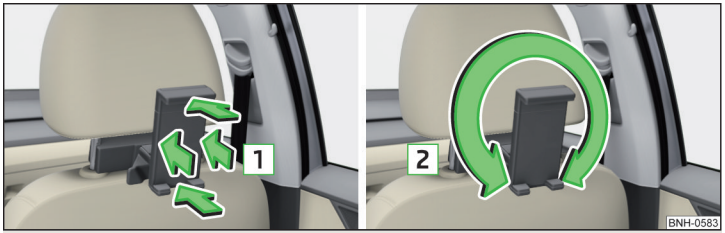


Fig. 99 **Tilting and rotating the holder**

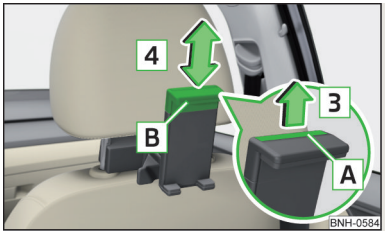


Fig. 100
Adjusting the holder size

Read and observe ! on page 80 first.

The holder may be **tilted** by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 and **turned** by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 99.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 100.

Note

If there is no external device in the holder, then we recommend that the part B is moved down fully. Otherwise, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment and transporting objects

Introduction

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. Therefore, adjust the speed and driving mode accordingly.

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or fixing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Tyre pressure is to match the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will go out automatically after 10 minutes.

! WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!
- An unsecured dirt or improperly attached load could slip during a sudden manoeuvre or in an accident - danger of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and do not put point-shaped objects - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

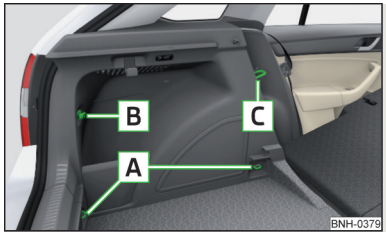


Fig. 101
Fasteners

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 101

A Lashing eyes for securing cargo, fastening nets and multifunction pocket
B Fastener for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
C Lashing eye for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket

The upper front lashing eye C is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes A is 350 kg.

Note

The lashing eyes A cannot be used for attaching bags and nets when the variable loading floor is in the upper position » page 86.

Fixing nets

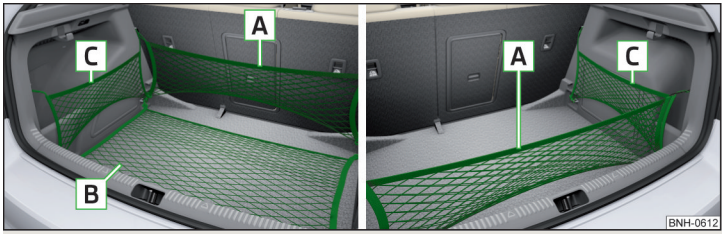


Fig. 102 **Fastening examples for nets**

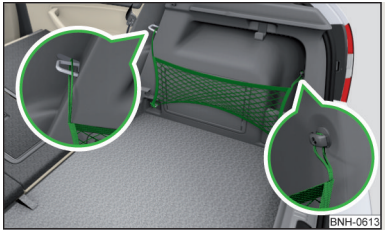


Fig. 103
Fastening a vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 102 **and** » Fig. 103

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

Multifunction pocket

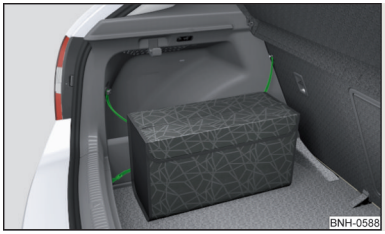


Fig. 104
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

The pocket » Fig. 104 can be secured to the fastening elements A, B and C » Fig. 101 *on page 82*.

The maximum permissible load for the pocket attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to secure the pocket to the fastening elements.

Hooks



Fig. 105
Hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

A hook for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., is provided on each side of the luggage compartment» Fig. 105.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

Luggage compartment cover

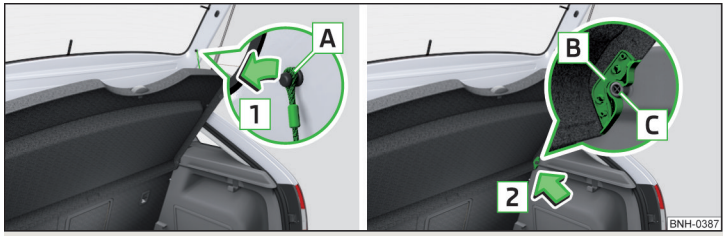


Fig. 106 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 106 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

The cover may be removed from the vehicle or stored behind the rear seat backs in the “park position” » Fig. 107 *on page 84*.

The maximum permissible load of the cover is 1 kg.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 106.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Installing

› Place the fixtures B on the cover above the brackets C on the side trim » Fig. 106.

› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the mounts C. The fixtures B must lock into place in the mounts C on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› Hook in the straps A on both sides of the boot lid.

WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - risk of injury if braking suddenly or colliding!

CAUTION

▪ Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
▪ The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
▪ The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
▪ There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

"Parking position" of the boot cover



Fig. 107
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

The boot cover can be stowed behind the rear seat backrests.

› Slide the dismantled cover between bolt A and contact surface B of the side panel » Fig. 107.

WARNING

When adjusting the "parking position", the boot cover must not be located between the bolt A and the rear seat backrest - risk of damaging the rear seat backrest and the boot cover.

CAUTION

▪ Before setting the "parking position" of the luggage compartment cover, the variable loading floor must be put in the upper or lower position» page 86.
▪ If the luggage compartment cover is in the "parking position", the "parking position" of the variable loading floor cannot be set » page 87.

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment



Fig. 108 **Remove the tray cover on the left / right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

The storage compartments are designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.

› To **remove**, grasp the top part of the cover and remove in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 108.

CAUTION

When handling the storage compartment cover, ensure that it and/or the luggage compartment trim is not damaged.

Storage net bag

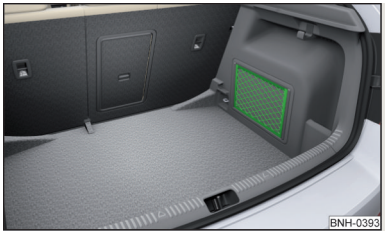


Fig. 109
Meshed pocket for storage

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

The meshed pocket for storage is located on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 109.

The meshed pocket for storage is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.

Cargo elements

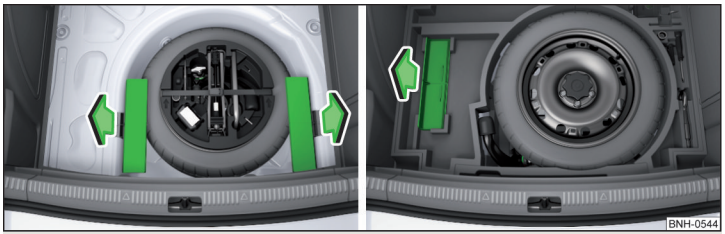


Fig. 110 **Remove cargo element: Version 1/version 2**

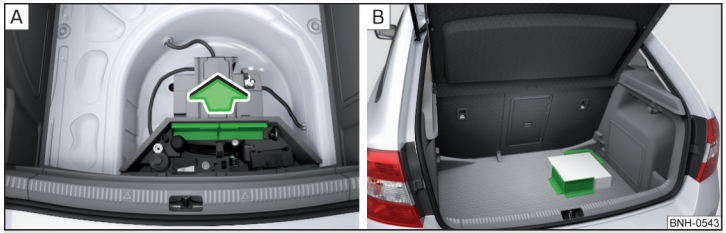


Fig. 111 **Remove cargo element: Variant 3/load fastening example**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

The cargo elements are designed for mounting and securing loads with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.

› To **use**, remove the cargo elements in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 110 and » Fig. 111 A.
› Use the cargo elements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats » Fig. 111 B.
› After use, secure the cargoelements in their original position.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 81 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Set in the upper / lower position

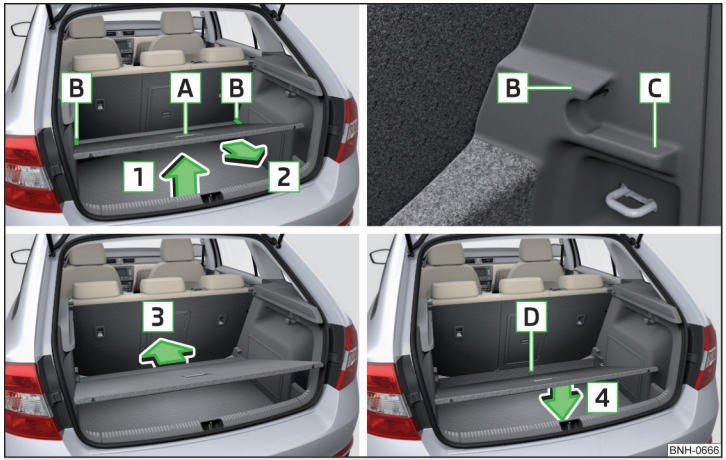


Fig. 112 **Set the variable loading floor to the upper/lower position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position as follows.

- Raise the variable loading floor by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and move partially in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 112.
- To **set in the upper position**, lift the variable loading floor in the front area and position on the edge C.
- To **set in the lower position**, move the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 2 until it removes itself from the mounts B, and position the front of the variable loading floor on the floor covering of the luggage compartment.
- Insert the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 3 until it stops (when **set in the lower position**, the front region D must be raised) and position in the direction of arrow 4.

The area under the variable loading floor can be used to stow small objects. The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor in the upper position is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position.

Note

The variable loading floor cannot be set in the upper/lower position when the luggage compartment cover is in the “parking position” » page 84.

Removing/inserting

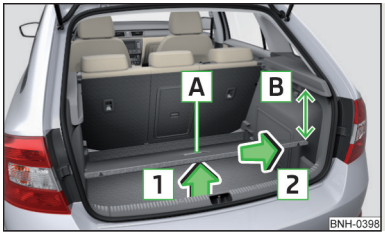


Fig. 113
Remove variable loading floor

Removing

- Lift the variable loading floor at handle A in the direction of arrow 1 until its rear area is about 15 cm B below the edge of the cover» Fig. 113.
- Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow 2.

Inserting

- Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 113.
- Insert the variable loading floor, titled with the front area about 15 cm B beneath the edge of the cover, in the vehicle.
- Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position or the lower position » page 86.

CAUTION

When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, a distance of 15 cm B » Fig. 113 underneath the edge of the cover must be maintained - risk of damaging the luggage compartment seal.

Note

The variable loading floor cannot be placed in the vehicle when the luggage compartment cover is in the “park position” » page 84.

Folding up/down, “parking position”

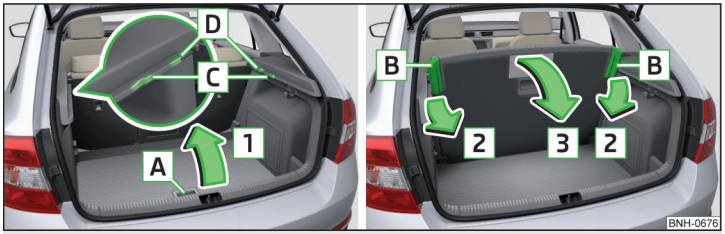


Fig. 114 **Fold up/fold down the variable loading floor**

Folding up

› Lift the variable loading floor using the handle A in the direction of 1. The foldable corners B must be secured in the areas of C or D **(“park position”)** » Fig. 114.

Folding down

› On the folding corners B, press in the direction of arrow 2, release this and fold down the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 3.

WARNING

The variable loading floor in the “parking position” restricts the driver's view at the back.

Note

▪ The variable loading floor can only be in set to the “parking position” when it is in the lower position and the luggage compartment cover has been taken out.

▪ If the variable loading floor is in the “parking position”, the “parking position” on the luggage compartment cover cannot be set » page 84.

Transportation on the roof rack



Fig. 115 **Attachment points**

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 115.

Mounting and dismounting of the roof bars is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Roof load

The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 75 kg.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed to aid road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack.

▪ Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly with suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.

▪ When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.

▪ The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstance – risk of accident!

CAUTION

▪ Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.

▪ Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

The heater heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above 2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

When the cooling system is switched on, it prevents misting of the windscreen and windows.

It is possible to boost the effectiveness of the cooling system by briefly activating the air recirculation system» page 90.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the outside temperature and the inside temperature should not be greater than 5 °C.
- The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner is to be carried out by a specialist company.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there is a risk of accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

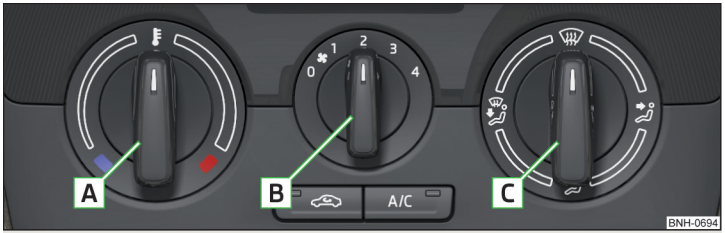


Fig. 116 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 88 first.

Individual functions can be adjusted or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 116. When the function is switched on, the indicator light in the button lights up.

A Setting temperature
▶ Reduce the temperature/ Increase the temperature

B Set the blower speed (Level 0: Blower off, level 4: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 91
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Air flow to the windows and the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 90

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Information on the cooling system

After pressing the button A/C the indicator light on the button lights up, even if not all the conditions for the cooling system have been met. The cooling system starts to work as soon as the following conditions have been met » page 88.

Note

To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 117 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 88 first.

Individual functions can be adjusted or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 117.

1 Setting temperature
▶ Reduce the temperature/ Increase the temperature

2 Selected temperature

3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit

4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system is switched on

5 Intensive air flow to the windscreen switched on

6 Direction of air flow

7 Recirculated air mode activated

8 Cooling system activated

9 Set blower speed

10 Set the blower speed (the set blower speed is indicated by the corresponding number of segments in the display)
- ▶ Turn to the left: Decrease speed / switch off Climatronic
- ▶ Turn to the right: Increase speed

11 Interior temperature sensor

MAX Switching on/off the intensive windscreen air flow - when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 90

Switching the airflow to the windows on and off

Switching the airflow to the upper body on and off

Switching the airflow to the footwell on and off

Switch recirculation on/off » page 90

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When this function is switched on, the corresponding icon appears in the display.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature
In the range between 16 °C to 29 °C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 ° C, LO lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting above 29 °C, HI lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit
Press the MAX and A/C buttons simultaneously and hold for about 2 s, the display shows the desired unit (position 3 » Fig. 117).

CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 117 – the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

Note
In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.

Climatronic - automatic mode

Read and observe ! on page 88 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **switch on** press the AUTO button. The display shows AUTO (pos. 4 » Fig. 117 *on page 89*).
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! on page 88 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on/off**, press the button.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. By pressing the button, the air recirculation also in this position can be switched on again.

Climatronic
With the recirculated-air mode switched on the symbol appears in the display.

The symbol disappears from the display after turning off the air recirculation.

If the humidity increases in the vehicle, an automatic shutdown of air recirculation can occur.

WARNING
The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because no fresh air is fed through from the outside. “Stale air” may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as windows mist up, turn on the recirculation system immediately - risk of accident!

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from the interior is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

If recirculated air mode is switched on for around 15 minutes, the symbol will begin to flash in the Climatronic display as a sign that the recirculated air mode is switched on long-term. If the recirculated air mode is not switched off, the symbol flashes for around 5 minutes.

Air outlet vents

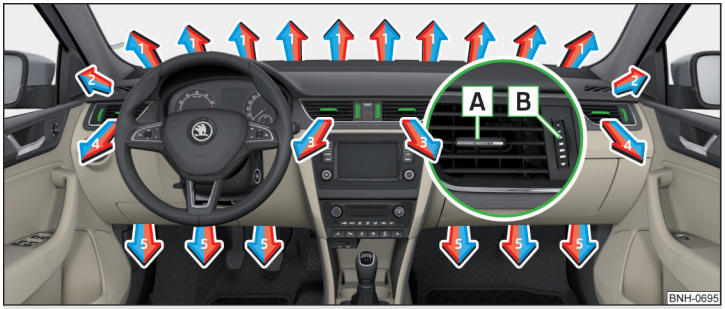


Fig. 118 **Air outlet vents**

Read and observe ! on page 88 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 118, the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

The airflow direction is set by moving the adjustment element A » Fig. 118 in the desired direction.

Open/close

› Turn the regulator B upwards/downwards » Fig. 118.

Depending on the setting for air distribution, the air will flow from the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air outlet vents » Fig. 118
/	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5
	3. 4
	4. 5

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Infotainment

Introductory information

Important information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

- Only use Infotainment in such a way that you have control of the vehicle in every traffic situation (e.g. do not write text messages while driving, do not link or connect the telephone, do not work with the contact list, do not enter any destinations, do not connect WLAN or SmartLink etc.) – Otherwise there is a risk of an accident!
- Always route the connection cable of the external device such that is does not restrict you when driving.

WARNING

- Adjust the volume to ensure that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle, e.g. the police, ambulances and fire engines, can be heard at all times.
- High volumes can cause hearing damage.

CAUTION

In some countries, some Infotainment functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is running faster than a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but complies with the national legal regulations.

Mobile devices and applications

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.



Fig. 119
QR code with reference to web pages for checking the compatibility of devices

The availability of some of the functions described in this Owner's Manual depends on the type of device to be connected and the applications installed in it.

Compatibility
On the ŠKODA pages, check to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile devices. This verification is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 119 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Applications
Applications can be installed in external devices (e.g. mobile, tablet) making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO can accept no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Infotainment overview

Description – Infotainment Amundsen

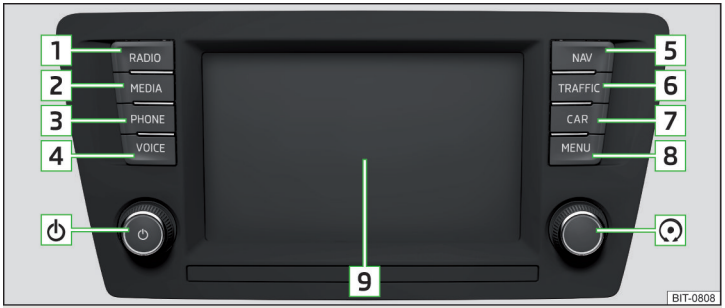


Fig. 120 **Infotainment Amundsen**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 113
2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 117
3 PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 127
4 VOICE - Voice control » page 99
5 NAV - *Navigation* menu » page 141
6 TRAFFIC - Target-oriented traffic information » page 156
7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 158
8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 97
9 Touchscreen » page 94

Description – Infotainment Swing



Fig. 121 **Infotainment Swing**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 113
2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 117
3 Depending on equipment fitted:
- PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 127
- MUTE - Muting

4 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 108
5 Depending on equipment fitted:
- APP/ - Menu SmartLink (Press)/turn on/off the voice control function SmartLink (hold) » page 136
- SOUND - Sound settings » page 108

6 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 158
7 Touchscreen » page 94
8 SD card slot » page 120

Description – Infotainment Blues



Fig. 122 **Infotainment Blues**

1 Dial (hereinafter only symbol ⊙)
2 Display
3 SD card slot
⏻ Switches Infotainment on/off
RADIO *Radio* menu » page 113 / Select radio frequency range
MEDIA *Media* menu » page 117 / Select audio source
EXTRAS Settings of the selected menu (*Radio* » page 112 /*Media* » page 112)
SETUP Infotainment settings » page 111
SOUND Sound settings » page 111
◁ / ▷ Backward / forward movement / settings of the selected menu item values
1 - 6 Function keys (each of the functions for these keys is described in the relevant chapters)

External module

Does not apply to Infotainment Swing, Blues.

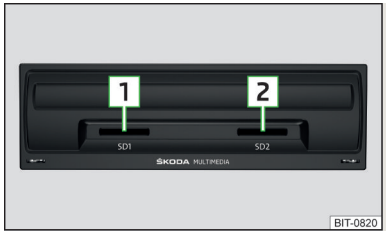


Fig. 123
Example of an external module (Infotainment Amundsen)

Depending on the vehicle configuration and Infotainment type, all the following elements must not be included in the external module.

The external module is located in the storage compartment on the front passenger side » Fig. 123.

1 SD1 card slot
2 SD2 card slot

Touch screen

The Infotainment can be operated by **lightly touching the screen with your fingers**.

The brightness level of the screen can be set by » page 102 or » page 108.

To protect the screen, a suitable protective film for touch screens can be used.

The screen can be cleaned with a soft cloth and pure spirit if necessary.

Infotainment operation

Infotainment operation

Screen areas

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.



Fig. 124
Screen areas

Description of the display » Fig. 124

A Status line with time and outdoor temperature data and other information
B Information and operation of the current menu
C Function surfaces of the current menu

Operation principles

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

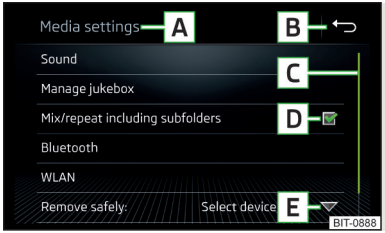


Fig. 125
Screen display

Description of the display » Fig. 125

A Name of the current menu
B Return to the higher-level menu

C Scroll symbol – you can move in the menu by moving your fingers up or down on the scroll symbol

D Menu item with “checkbox”
- ☑ - Function is switched on
- ☐ - Function is switched off

E ▼ Opens a sub-menu of the menu item with a “pop-up window”

Function surfaces
The screen areas which confirm a function or a menu are called “**function surfaces**”.
- **White text** – the surface is active and thus selectable
- **Grey text** – the surface is inactive and therefore not selectable
- **Green frame** – currently selected surface

Selecting a menu/menu item/function
- Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction.
- By moving your finger over the scroll bar
- By turning the dial ⊙.

Confirming a menu/menu item/function
- By tapping on the function surface.
- By pressing the dial ⊙.

Returning to higher-level menu
- By tapping on the function surface ⮌.
- By tapping on the screen outside of the “pop-up window”.
- By pressing the corresponding button next to the screen (e.g. in the menu *Media*, by pressing the MEDIA button).

Selecting a menu item/function value
- ⦿ - Selected menu item/function value
- ○ - Deselected menu item/function value

Setting a value
- By tapping on the function surface ◁ or ▷ in the bottom of the screen.
- By touching or moving your finger over the scale.
- By turning the dial ⊙.

i Note
Depending on the equipment, the Infotainment can also be operated by means of the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel. Further information » page 47.

Operating principles and display areas

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

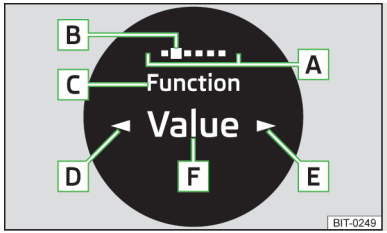


Fig. 126
Display

Description of the display » Fig. 126

A Total number of menu items for each setting
B Position of the current menu item
C Name of the current menu item
D Go to previous menu item value
E Go to next menu item value
F Current menu item value

Setting a value
The desired value of the selected item will be set to one of the following ways.
- By pressing button ◁ or ▷.
- By turning the dial ⊙.

Exit setting
To exit setting, press one of the buttons 1 - 6.

If the device is not being operated, the display switches off after a few seconds in the last selected mode of (*Radio* or *Media*).

Operating the menus

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

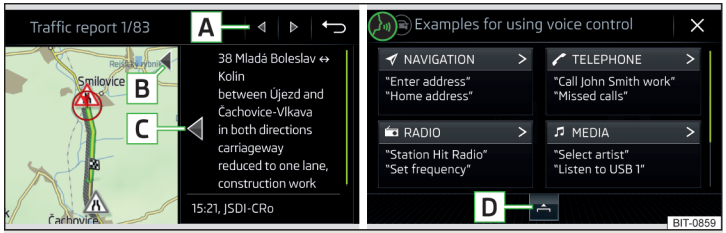


Fig. 127 **Operating the menus**

Operating the menus » Fig. 127

A Browsing the menu, list entries

B Expand/reduce the menu window

C Expand/reduce the menu window (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

D Open/close the menu window (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

× Close the menu window

Alphanumeric keyboard

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.



Fig. 128
Example of the keyboard display

The alphanumeric keyboard is used to enter letters, numbers and characters.

Description of the alphanumeric keyboard » Fig. 128

A Input line

B Context-dependent:
- ⇧/⇧ - Switch from upper case to lower case and vice versa
- §&# - Switch to special characters
- 123 - Switch to numbers

C Context-dependent:
- 123 - Switch to numbers
- ABC - Switch to Latin letters
- АБВ - Switch to Cyrillic letters

⋮≡ - Display of visited entries (the number of visited entries is displayed in the function surface)

⌫ Erase the entered characters

◿ Hold to display the variants of the respective letters.

🌐 / 🌍 Switch between keyboards with specific characters of the selected languages » page 103 or » page 109

␣ Space

< Move the cursor within the input line to the left

> Move the cursor within the input line to the right

OK Confirmation of the entered characters

Search
While entering characters, a search is made for corresponding entries.

The entry to be searched for (such as a telephone contact) must be entered along with any special characters (diacritics).

By tapping on the function surface ⋮≡ a list of matching entries opens.

Switching Infotainment on/off

› To **switch Infotainment on/off**, press ⏻.

Automatic switch-on of Infotainment
If Infotainment was not switched off with ⏻ before the ignition was switched off, it will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on.

Automatic switch-off of Infotainment
If the vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition lock while Infotainment is switched on, Infotainment will switch off automatically.

If the vehicle is fitted with the starter button, Infotainment will switch off automatically after the engine is switched off and the door is opened.

With the ignition off, Infotainment will automatically switch off after about 30 minutes.

Infotainment switches off automatically under certain circumstances. Infotainment informs you of this via a text message on the Infotainment display.

Infotainment restart
If Infotainment stops responding (if it "freezes"), it can be restarted by pressing and holding ⏻ for longer than 10 s (does not apply to Infotainment Blues).

Show time and date on the screen

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

You can display the time and date on the Infotainment screen in standby mode and in "Screen off" mode.

Standby mode
With the ignition on and infotainment off (Standbymode), it is possible to display the time and date on the Infotainment screen.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface → **Screen** → **Show clock in standby mode**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen** → **Show clock in standby mode**.

The display mode can be changed by moving your finger sideways across the screen (does not apply to Infotainment Swing).

"Screen off" mode
With the ignition on and functions **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** and **Display clock when screen is off** » page 102 enabled, it is possible to display the time and date when the Infotainment screen is switched off.

The display type depends on the display mode selected in standby mode (does not apply to the Infotainment Swing).

Adjusting the volume

Every change in volume is displayed on the screen.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing
› To **increase the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ clockwise.
› To **decrease the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise to 0.
› **Or:** To **activate/deactivate the mute setting**, press the button MUTE (applies to Infotainment Swing).

Applies to Infotainment Blues
› To **increase the volume**, turn the control switch 1 » Fig. 122 *on page 93* clockwise.
› To **decrease the volume**, turn the control switch 1 anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller 1 anticlockwise to 0.

The following symbol appears on the screen when the sound is muted 🔇.

If playback was coming from a source in the *Media* menu at the time of muting, then playback will be stopped (not applicable to AUX).

! CAUTION
- High volumes can cause sound resonance in the vehicle.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

Infotainment menus

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

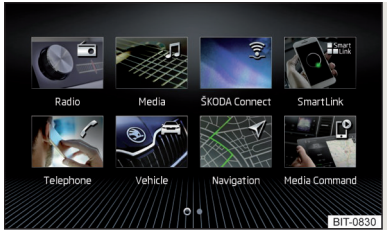


Fig. 129
Overview of Infotainment menus: grid display

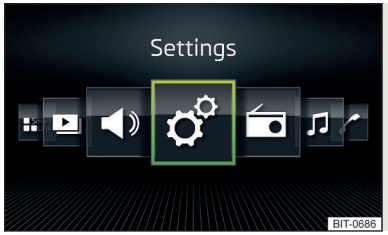


Fig. 130
Overview of infotainment menus: horizontal display

› To **display the overview of Infotainment menus**, press the MENU button.
› To **set the display mode**, press the button MENU, then tap the function surface → **Screen** → **Menu:**.
› Select the **Grid display** » Fig. 129 or **Horizont. Display** » Fig. 130 option.

Overview of Infotainment menus

- *Radio* menu » page 113
- *Media* menu » page 117
- ŠKODA Connect Online Services » page 12
- *SmartLink* menu » page 136
  With a connection established to an external device, the actual connection is shown instead of a symbol
  - **Android Auto** » page 137
  - **Apple CarPlay** » page 138
  - **MirrorLink®** » page 138
- *Telephone* menu » page 127
- Vehicle system settings » page 158
- *Navigation* menu » page 141 (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- List of traffic reports (TMC) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 156
- *Media Command* menu (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 125
- *Images* menu » page 124
- Sound settings » page 102
- Infotainment settings » page 102

Configuration wizard

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

The configuration wizard is **automatically displayed** if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on the Infotainment.

› For **manual display** in Infotainment Amundsen, press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **Configuration wizard**.
› For **manual display** in Infotainment Swing, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Configuration wizard**.

The Configuration wizard allows you to set the following menu items in sequence.

- Time and date format
- Storing the radio station with the strongest reception signal at present
- Pairing and connecting a telephone to the Infotainment system
- Home address (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- Setting the ŠKODA Connect Online Services

The selected menu item is marked with the ✓ symbol.

Operating using an application in the external device

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing.

Some Infotainment functions can be operated using an application in the supported external device.

For the complete functionality of the application, data transmission from external devices must be activated and, if necessary, operation of the Infotainment via the application must be approved.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. To do this, press the MENU button and then tap function surface → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.
› Release Infotainment operation using the application. To do this, press the MENU button and then tap function surface → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Operation via apps:** → **Confirm/Allow**.
› Connect Infotainment to an external device via WLAN » page 135.
› In the external device, launch an application for Infotainment operation (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. Press the SETUP button and then tap on the function surface **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Note

The description of Infotainment operation using ŠKODA Media Command is part of the application.

Voice control

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The navigation, telephone, radio and media menus can be operated by voice commands.

The voice control system can be used either by the driver or by the front passenger.

Function requirements for voice control

✓ Infotainment is switched on.

✓ No telephone call is being made using a telephone connected to Infotainment.

✓ The parking aid is not active.

Requirements for optimum voice command recognition

- The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded.
- Speak at your normal volume without intonation and long pauses.
- Avoid bad pronunciation.
- Close the doors and windows in order to prevent environmental influences from interfering with the function of the voice control.
- You are advised to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
- During voice control, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.

WARNING

The emergency number should be dialled manually. Your voice commands may not be recognised in such situations. The telephone connection may not be established or the connection may take too much time to complete.

CAUTION

- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.
- For some Infotainment languages, voice control is not available. Infotainment indicates this through a text message that is displayed on the screen after setting the Infotainment language.

Note

During voice control, no navigation announcements and traffic announcements are played.

Switching voice control on/off



Fig. 131
Voice control: main menu

Switch on

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel **or** button VOICE on the Infotainment system.

The **main menu** is displayed » Fig. 131.

Switch off

› Press the button twice on the multifunction steering wheel **or** button VOICE on the Infotainment system.

› **Or** issue the voice command **"End voice control"**.

Operation principle

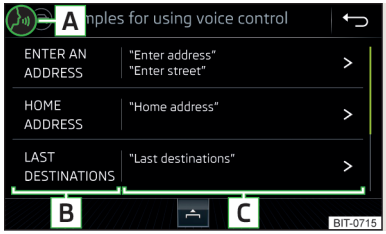


Fig. 132
Example of screen display

The voice control main menu » Fig. 131 *on page 99* contains basic voice commands for the individual menus.

Other voice commands are displayed by tapping the respective function surface, if required, by issuing the name of respective command (e.g. navigation). The screen shows the following » Fig. 132.

A Context-dependent:
- The system is waiting for a voice command.
- The system recognises a voice command
- The system plays a message
- Voice command entry was stopped

B Available list entries
C Possible voice commands
> Displaying other possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be issued are indicated in “quotation marks”.

Note
Depending on the equipment, the voice control symbols A » Fig. 132 are also displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Voice commands

Enter
The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded. The input tone can be switched on/off. To do this, press MENU and then tap on → **Voice control**.

It is not necessary to wait for the end of message playback when Infotainment is playing a message. The Infotainment message can be terminated by pressing the button VOICE or button on the multifunction steering wheel. Then a voice command can be issued. Voice control is much faster as a result.

Stop
This allows more time to enter the voice command (e.g. in the list of retrieved contacts).

The process for entering voice commands can be stopped by moving a finger up/down across the screen or by turning the controller .

When stopping, the symbol changes from to .

Restore
The procedure for entering voice commands can be restarted in one of the following ways.
- By tapping on the function surface .
- By pressing the button VOICE on the Infotainment.
- By pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Not recognising a voice command
If a voice command is not recognised by the Infotainment system three times in succession, then voice control is stopped.

Correction of a voice command input
A voice command can be corrected, modified or re-entered by pressing the button VOICE or the button on the multifunction steering wheel. However, this is only possible as long as the symbol is displayed on the screen.

You do not have to wait until the voice command is recognised by Infotainment.

Voice commands can be used during voice control

Voice command	Function
“Back”	Return to the previous menu
“Help”	Reproduce and display possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be used while browsing the list entries

Voice command	Function
“Next page”	Browse menu/list/directory
“Previous page”	
“First page”	
“Last page”	

Additional Information

Navigation – applies to Infotainment Amundsen
To enter a destination, you must first issue the command **“Enter address”** and then follow the Infotainment instructions.

It is not necessary to spell city and street names if the entered destination is located in a country that has no voice control available for the language.

Online POI search – applies to Infotainment Amundsen
When Infotainment Online » page 16 services are activated, a POI search can also be carried out online by issuing the voice command **“Find online POI”**.

Radio
To enable a radio station to be selected using voice command, the station must be stored in the list of available stations » page 115 or in the preset list » page 115.

Updating the Infotainment software



Fig. 133
Available software updates on the ŠKODA websites

The software update ensures optimum operation of Infotainment (e.g. compatibility with new telephones).

Information on Infotainment compatibility can be found on the following ŠKODA Internet pages. This is done by scanning the QR code » Fig. 133 **or** entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen
- To **determine the software version**, press the MENU button then tap the function surface → **System information**.
- To **start the software update**, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface → **System information** → **Update software**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
- To **determine the software version**, press the SETUP button, then tap the **System information** function surface.
- To **start the software update**, press the SETUP button, then tap the **System information** → **Update software** function surface.

Infotainment settings - Amundsen

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Radio announcements** - Volume adjustment of traffic announcements (TP)
  - **Navigation announcements** - Volume setting for navigation announcements
  - **Voice control** - Volume setting for voice output
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Set the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Speed dependent Speed-dep. vol.adjust.** - Increases the volume as speed increases
  - **AUX volume** - Sets the volume for the device connected via AUX
    - **Quiet** - Low volume
    - **Medium** - Medium volume
    - **Loud** - High volume
  - **Bluetooth audio** - Volume setting of the external device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
    - **Quiet** - Low volume
    - **Medium** - Medium volume
    - **Loud** - High volume
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when the parking aid is activated
  - **Entertainment fad. (Navigation)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a navigation announcement
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **ŠKODA Surround** - Switch surround sound on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)
- **Virtual Subwoofer** -Switch virtual subwoofer on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch audible tone when touching the screen on/off
- **No navigation announcements during calls** - Switches the navigation prompts on or off during a telephone conversation

Display settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Screen**.

- **Menu** - Setting the Infotainment menu display
  - **Horizont. display** - Horizontal display » Fig. 130 *on page 98*
  - **Grid display** - Grid display » Fig. 129 *on page 97*
- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable/disable the automatic power off function
- **Display clock when screen is off** - Time and date display when the screen is switched off
- **Brightness level** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch audible tone when touching the screen on/off
- **Animation when finger near screen** - Switch the proximity sensors on/off (when the function is on the bottom bar with function surfaces will be displayed e.g. in the main *Navigation* menu when you move a finger towards the screen)
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Time and date**.

- **Time source:** - Time source settings: manual / GPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Summer (DST)** - Switches summer time on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switches the automatic switch to summer time on/off
- **Time zone:** - Select the time zone
- **Time format:** - Setting the time format
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Sets the date format

Infotainment language settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

In some languages, after selecting the function surface, **Female** or **Male** are displayed for the choice of Infotainment voice prompts.

Note

- When a language is selected which does not support voice control, Infotainment will indicate this with a message on the screen.
- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

More keypad languages settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow characters other than those in the currently selected language to be entered.

Unit settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Fuel consumption:** - Consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tire pressure

Settings for data transfer

Activated data transfer enables data transfer between the Infotainment system and the external device or the operation of some Infotainment functions using the applications of the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Mobile device data transfer**.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps** - Switch data transfer on and off
- **Operation via apps:** - Setting Infotainment operation via the applications of the external device (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
  - **Deactivate** - Deactivation of Infotainment operation via an external device
  - **Confirm** - Infotainment operation with required confirmation
  - **Allow** - Infotainment operation without required confirmation

Voice control settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Voice control**.

- **Example commands (Infotainment syst.)**- Switch on/off the menus containing basic voice commands when voice control is activated
- **Voice control session start tone** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal when turning on the voice control
- **Voice control session end tone** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal when voice control ends
- **Input tone in voice dialogue** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal for the voice input
- **End tone in voice dialogue** - Activate/deactivate the audible signal for the voice input

Safe removal of the external device

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Remove safely:** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Factory settings**.

In this menu, all or only selected settings can be restored.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch the Bluetooth® function on/off
- **Visibility:** - Switch the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for Bluetooth® devices on/off
- **Name** - Change the name of the Bluetooth® unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of paired Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Search for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Activate/deactivate the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Wireless settings

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **WLAN**.

- **WLAN** - List of available hotspots of external devices
  - **WLAN** - Switch Infotainment WLAN on/off
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establish a secure connection to the hotspot of the external device using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
  - **Manual settings** - Parameter settings for searching and connecting to the hotspot of the external device
    - **Network name** - Enter the Hotspot name
    - **Network key** - Access passkey setting
    - **Safety level** - Security setting (WPA2 always set)
    - **Connect** - Establish a connection
  - **Find** - Search / Restore the list of available hotspots
- **Mobile hotspot** - Infotainment hotspot setting (the symbol is displayed in the function surface with the number of connected external devices)
  - **Mobile hotspot** - Switch the Infotainment hotspot on/off
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establish a secure connection to the Infotainment hotspot via WPS (applies to Amundsen)
  - **Hotspot (WLAN) settings** - Parameter settings for connection to the Infotainment hotspot
    - **Safety level** - Security setting (WPA2 always set)
    - **Network key** - Input of the access password
    - **SSID: ...** - Name of the Infotainment hotspot
    - **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off
    - **Store** - Storage of the parameters set for the Infotainment hotspot

Network settings

Applies to infotainment Amundsen with the connected Carstick device.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Network**.

- **Network settings** - Sets the data connection from the associated telephone service provider (APN settings)
  - **Access point name: ...** - Access point name setting
  - **User name: ...** - User name setting
  - **Password: ...** - Password setting
  - **Authentication:** - Setting the check type
    - **Normal** - Without verification
    - **Safe** - Verification required
  - **Reset Access Point (APN)** - Delete the parameters for the network setting
  - **Store** - Saves the parameters for the network setting
- **Network provider: ...** - Selection of the network provider (the menu item is visible when the SIM card is inserted in the CarStick device)
- **Data roaming** - Enable/disable the use of data roaming connection
- **Current connection details** - Display of information on data downloaded (tap the function surface **Reset** to delete the data information)
- **Data connection:** - Usage settings for the data connection (Internet connection) of the SIM card inserted in the CarStick device
  - **Off** - Use of the data connection is not possible
  - **Ask** - Use of the data connection is only possible after it has been confirmed
  - **On** - Use of the data connection is possible at any time

ŠKODA Connect Online Services settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on/off
- **Registration** - Enter the activation PIN code for online services (received in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website)

System information

› Press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, the Bluetooth® software version, the navigation database version, etc.

› To **Update** the Infotainment software, Bluetooth® software version, etc., tap on the function surface **Update software**.
› To **Update** the POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, tap on the function surface **Online update**.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting ranges

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Scan** - Automatic playback of short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Arrow buttons** - Set the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Preset list** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Station list** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches TP traffic program on/off
- **Delete presets** - Deletes the preset buttons
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Radio text** - Switches the radio text display (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **Autostore station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **Region for station logos:** - Setting the region for station logos
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Activate/deactivate the search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **RDS Regional** - Switch on/off the automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **Autostore station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **DAB traffic announcements** - Switch DAB traffic announcements on/off
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch other announcements on/off (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Activate/deactivate automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Activate/deactivate auto-switching from DAB to the FM broadcasting range if the DAB signal is lost

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by (**FM**) while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› In the main *Media* menu, tap function surface ⚙ .

- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Activate/deactivate the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **WLAN** - WLAN settings (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- **Remove safely:** - Secure removal of the external device
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches the traffic program on/off

Image menu settings

› In the main *Images* menu, tap on function surface ⚙ .

- **View images:** - Adjust the picture display
  - **Full** - Display the maximum image size while retaining the aspect ratio
  - **Automatic** - Full screen display

- **Display time:** - Set the display time for the slideshow
- **Repeat slideshow** - Switching the slideshow repeat on/off

Telephone menu settings

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Hands-free telephone** - Switching a call to the phone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select mobile phone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings » page 103
- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Mailbox number:** - Enter the phone number of the mailbox
  - **Sort by:** - Arrange the phone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **Forename** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Import contacts:** - Phone contact import
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected telephone)
  - **Reminder:Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
  - **Show pictures for contacts** - Activate/deactivate the display of the images assigned to the contacts
- **Conference call** - Activate/deactivate conference calls
- **Network** - Set the telephone service provider network of the SIM card inserted in the CarStick device (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 104

SmartLink+ menu settings

› In the main *SmartLink* menu, tap on function surface ⚙ .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Activate/deactivate data transfer for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink*® - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn the display of Mirror link® application messages on the Infotainment screen on/off

Navigation menu settings

Route options

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Route options**.

- **Suggest 3 alternative routes** - Switch the menu for alternative routes on/off (economical, fast, short)
- **Route** - Setting the preferred route
- **Most frequent routes** - Show/hide the menu of the most frequent routes in the split screen
- **Dynamic route** - Switch on/off dynamic route recalculation due to TMC traffic reports or online traffic reports
- **Avoid motorways** - Activate/deactivate the non-use of motorways in the route calculation
- **Avoid ferries and motorail trains** - Activate/deactivate the non-use of ferries and motorail trains in the route calculation
- **Avoid toll roads** - Activate/deactivate the use of toll roads for route calculation
- **Avoid tunnels** - Switch on/off use of tunnels for route calculation
- **Avoid routes requiring toll stickers** - Activate/deactivate the use of routes requiring toll stickers on/off for route calculation
- **Show available toll stickers** - Selection of countries for which a valid toll sticker is required (routes requiring toll stickers are used for route calculation)
- **Include trailer** - Activate/deactivate the setting to include the trailer in route calculation » page 153

Map

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Map**.

- **Show road signs** - Switch the display of traffic signs on/off
- **Lane guidance** - Activate/deactivate the display of lane guidance
- **Show favourites** - Activate/deactivate the display of favourites
- **Show POIs** - Activate/deactivate the display of POIs
  - **Select categories for POIs** - Select the categories of displayed POIs
  - **Show brand logos for POIs** - Activate/deactivate the company logos available for the POIs shown

- **Traffic flow settings** - Setting for the display of a traffic obstruction received from online traffic
  - **Display free-moving traffic** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with free-moving traffic
  - **Display congestion** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with heavy traffic
  - **Display traffic events (symbols on map)** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with a traffic incident

Manage memory

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Manage memory**.

- **Sort contacts:** - Sets the phone book arrangement
  - **By surname** - Sorting by the contact surname
  - **By Forename** - Sorting by the contact first name
- **Define home address** - Enter the home address
- **Delete "My POIs"** - Delete your own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** - Import/update your own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Retrieve "My POIs" (online)** - Online import/update of your own POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- **Import destinations (SD/USB)** - Import destinations in vCard format
- **Delete user data** - Delete user data (by tapping function surface **Delete** and confirming the deletion)
  - **Last destinations** - Delete the last destinations
  - **Dest. memory** - Delete the stored destinations
  - **Online destinations** - Delete the stored online destinations
  - **Routes** - Delete saved routes
  - **My points of interest (Personal POI)** - Delete the custom POIs
  - **Entered cities** - Delete the history of places already entered via the address
  - **Home address** - Delete the stored home address
  - **Flagged destination** - Delete the flagged destination
  - **Most frequent routes** - Delete the most travelled routes

Navigation announcements

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Navigation announcements**.

- **Volume** - Volume control of the navigation announcements
- **Entertainment fad. (Navigation)** - Adjust the fading of the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when navigation announcements are being made
- **No navigation announcements during calls** - Activate/deactivate non-playback of navigation announcements during a telephone call
- **Note: "My POIs"** - Activate/deactivate an audible indication when approaching a custom POI (if supported by the imported custom POI)

Speed limits

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Speed limits**.

The maximum speed limits for the current country are displayed.

With the function switched on **Note: national border crossed** » page 108, *Advanced settings*, display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

Fuel options

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Fuel options**.

- **Select preferred fuel station** - Select your preferred fuel station brand (the selected station brand will be displayed in the first three positions of the list)
- **Fuel warning** – Activate/deactivate the display of a warning message with the option to search for the nearest petrol station when the fuel level reaches the reserve area

Version information

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ → **Version information**.

A list of countries is displayed that exist for the navigation data, together with the date of the last update.

The navigation data can be updated by tapping on the **Update function surface (SD/USB)** or **Online update**.

The information on updating the navigation data can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA websites.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Advanced settings

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Time display** - Select the time display in the status line
  - - Estimated arrival time at destination
  - - Estimated travelling time to the destination
- **Staus line** - Selection of the target type, for which the status line, the route and travel time are displayed (Here it is also determined which destination type after selecting →)
  - - Route destination
  - - Next stopover
- **Note: national border crossed** - Switching the display of information on country-specific speed limits when crossing a national border on/off
- **Demo mode** - Activate/deactivate guidance in demo mode
- **Define demo mode starting point** - Specify the start point of the route guidance in demo mode by entering the address or the current vehicle position

Infotainment settings – Swing

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND or SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Sound**.

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Set the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Announcements** - Adjustment of traffic announcements volume (TP)
  - **Speed-dep. vol.adjust.** - Volume increases as speed increases
  - **Entertainment fading** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Entertainment fad. (Navigation)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a navigation announcement
  - **AUX volume** - Sets the volume for the device connected via AUX
  - **Bluetooth audio** - Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Touchscreen tone** - Activates/deactivates the acoustic tone when touching the screen
- **ŠKODA Surround** - Switch surround sound on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)
- **Virtual Subwoofer** -Switch virtual subwoofer on/off (cannot be used in *Radio* mode)

Display settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable/disable the automatic power off function
- **Display clock when screen is off** - Time and date display when the screen is switched off
- **Brightness level** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch audible tone when touching the screen on/off
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Time and date**.

- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Time format:** - Setting the time format
- **Summer (DST)** - Switches summer time on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switches the automatic switch to summer time on/off
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Sets the date format

Infotainment language settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

More keypad languages settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **More keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow characters other than those in the currently selected language to be entered.

Unit settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Fuel consumption:** - Fuel consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tire pressure

Activating/deactivating data transfer

Activated data transfer enables data transfer between the Infotainment and an external device.

› Press the SETUP button and then tap on the function surface **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Safe removal of the external data source

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Remove safely** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Factory settings**.

In this menu, individual settings or all settings can be restored at the same time.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch the Bluetooth® function on/off
- **Visibility:** - Switch the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for Bluetooth® devices on/off
- **Forename** - Change the name of the Bluetooth® unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of paired Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Search for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Activate/deactivate the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Settings of online services ŠKODA Connect

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **ŠKODA Connect (online services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on/off
- **Registration** - Enter the activation PIN code for online services (received in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website)

System information

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, Bluetooth® software version, etc.

› To **Update** the Infotainment software, Bluetooth® software version, etc., tap on the function surface **Update software**.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting ranges

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Scan** - Automatic playback of short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Arrow buttons** - Set the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Presets** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Stations** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches the traffic program on/off
- **Radio text** - Switches the radio text display (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Stort station list** - Sort types of radio stations in the station list
  - **By group** - Group sorting by transmitted program
  - **Alphabet** - Alphabetically order according to station name
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Delete presets** - Delete the stations stored under preset buttons
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **RDS Regional** - Switch on/off the automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Activates/deactivates the search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **Stort station list** - Sort types of radio stations in the station list
  - **By group** - Group sorting by transmitted program
  - **Alphabet** - Alphabetically order according to station name

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **DAB traffic announcements** - Enable/disable DAB announcements
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch other announcements on/off (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Activate/deactivate automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Enable/disable auto-switching from DAB to the FM frequency band if the DAB signal is lost

DAB program tracking
When a DAB transmitter is a part of several broadcast stations and if the current station group is not available on any other frequency, then when the signal is poor, the same station will be searched in another station group.

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by (**FM**) while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› In the main *Media* menu, tap function surface ⚙ .

- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Activate/deactivate the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches the traffic program on/off

- **Activate AUX** - Enable/disable the AUX input
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device

Telephone menu settings

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface .

- **Hands-free telephone** - Switching a call to the phone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select mobile phone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
  - **Find** - Search for available phones
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings » page 109
- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Sort by:** - Arrange the telephone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **Forename** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Import contacts** - Import phone contacts
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected telephone)
- **Reminder:Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
- **Simultaneous calls** - Enable/disable the option to hold two concurrent calls

SmartLink+ menu settings

› In the main *SmartLink* menu, tap on function surface .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Activate/deactivate data transfer for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink®* - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Connect automatically via Bluetooth** - Activate/deactivate the option of pairing and connecting the external device via Bluetooth®
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Activate/deactivate the display of Mirror link® application messages on the Infotainment screen

Infotainment settings – Blues

Infotainment system settings

Introduction to the subject

Individual menu items for the Infotainment settings can be accessed by pressing one of the buttons below.

SOUND Sound settings » page 111
SETUP Infotainment settings » page 111
EXTRAS Settings of the currently opened *Radio* » page 112 or *Media* menu » page 112

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND button repeatedly.

The following menu items of the settings are displayed in sequence.
- **Bass** - bass setting
- **Middle** - mid-tone setting
- **Treble** - treble setting
- **Balance** - Sets the balance between the left and right-hand sides
- **Fader** - Sets the sound focus between front/rear (applies to vehicles with rear speakers)

Infotainment settings

› Press the SETUP button repeatedly.

The following menu items are displayed in sequence.
- **GALA** - Speed-sensitive volume adjustment (higher numbers indicate a steeper increase in the volume level)
- **On volume** - Sets the maximum volume when the Infotainment is switched on
- **TP volume** - Sets the volume for in-coming traffic program alerts (TP)
- **PDC audio** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when the parking aid is activated
  - **Low** - Low volume attenuation
  - **Middle** - Medium volume attenuation
  - **High** - High volume attenuation

- **Clock** - Time display on the Infotainment display (with the ignition on and the Infotainment off)
  - **Yes** - Switches the display on
  - **No** - Switches the display off
- **Restore** - Reset to factory settings
  - **Press** ▷ - Confirmation of the factory settings

Radio menu settings

› When the *Radio* menu is open, press button EXTRAS repeatedly.

The following menu items are displayed in sequence.
- **TP** - Sets the traffic news reception
  - **Yes** - Traffic news is being received
  - **No** - Traffic news is not being received
- **Scan** - Browse available radio stations
  - **Press** ▷ - Start the scan
- **Manual** - Manual selection of a radio station
  - **Press** ▷ - Start manual selection
- **Arrows** - Sets the station selection (function of the ◁ or ▷ button)
  - **Stations** - Select from the list of available stations
  - **Presets** - Select from the preset buttons

Media menu settings

› With the *Media* menu open, press button EXTRAS repeatedly.

The following menu items are displayed in sequence.
- **Mix** - Switch random play on/off
  - **Off** - Switch off
  - **On** - Switch on
- **Repeat** - Repeat playback
  - **All** - From the current source
  - **Track** - Track
  - **Folder** - Folder
- **TP** - Sets the traffic news reception
  - **Yes** - Traffic news is being received
  - **No** - Traffic news is not being received
- **AUX** - Activate/deactivate the AUX input
  - **On** - Activation
  - **Off** - Deactivation
- **AUX vol.** - Sets the input level of the AUX audio source (the menu item is only available when an audio source is connected)
  - **Low** - Low volume
  - **Middle** - Medium volume
  - **High** - High volume

Radio

Operation

Introduction to the subject

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the Infotainment type, analogue radio reception of the FM and AM frequency ranges as well as DAB digital radio reception is possible.

CAUTION

- For vehicles with window antennas, do not stick foil or metal coated stickers to the window - radio signal reception could be affected.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can interfere with the radio signal. even causing it to fail completely.

Main menu

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

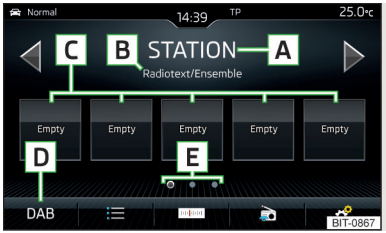


Fig. 134
Radio: main menu (DAB)

› To **display** the main menu, press button RADIO.
› **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 134

A The selected radio station (name or frequency)
B Radio text (FM) / Description of the group (DAB)
C Preset buttons for favourite stations
D Choice of radio broadcasting range (FM / AM / DAB)
E Choice of storage group for the preferred station
◁ ▷ Change the station
List of available stations
Manual / semi-automatic station search
Radio text display (DAB) / picture presentation (DAB)
Settings of the *Radio* menu » page 105 or » page 110

Information symbol in the status line

Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic signal is available
no TP	Traffic signal is not available
	Signal is not available (DAB)

If the displayed station name continuously changes (dynamic text), then it is possible to fix the current text by holding your finger on the device screen in the station name area. By holding your finger in the area of the station name again, the station name is displayed in its entirety again.

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

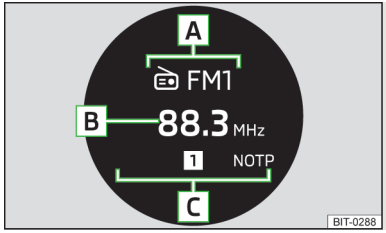


Fig. 135
Display

Description of the display » Fig. 135

A The selected broadcasting range
B The selected radio station (frequency or identifier)
C Status bar

Symbols in the status bar C

Symbol	Meaning
MANUAL	Browse radio frequency range manually
SCAN	Browse radio frequency range automatically
1 - 6	Number of a position (station button) under which the radio station is stored

Symbol	Meaning
🔇	Sound off
TP	A traffic information station is available
NOTP	No traffic information station is available

Choose broadcasting range
Each broadcasting area has two storage groups - **FM1** and **FM2** or **AM1** and **AM2**.

▶ Press the RADIO button repeatedly.

Searching for stations and selecting the frequency

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

Searching for stations
› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ◁ or ▷ .

Depending on the setting ⚙ → **Arrow buttons:** will set an available station from the **Stations list** or a station of the current broadcast range on the **Station buttons**.

Selecting the frequency
› To **display the value** of the currently chosen frequency, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap the function surface .
› To **set the desired frequency value** use the slider or the function surfaces ◁ ▷ in the bottom area of the screen, if necessary, turn the controller ⊙ .

Scanning through the stations one after the other (scan)
The function scans through all the available stations in the current frequency range in succession, for a few seconds each.

› To **start** automatic scanning of the available stations, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Scan**.
› To **end** automatic scanning, tap the function surface SCAN .

Searching for stations and selecting the frequency

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

Searching for stations
The Infotainment will automatically search for available radio stations in the background, which can be selected immediately after the Infotainment is switched on.

› Press button ◁ or ▷.

You will switch to the previous or next station.

Semi-automatic station search
› Press and hold button ◁ or ▷.

A search commences in the selected direction and stops at the next station with sufficient signal strength.

Selecting the frequency
› Press button EXTRAS ··➡ **Manual**.
› Press button ◁ or ▷ repeatedly and set the desired value for the frequency range.

The value of the frequency range changes by 0.1 MHz on the FM band and 9 kHz in the AM band.

Scanning through the stations one after the other (scan)
› Press button EXTRAS ··➡ **Scan** → ▷.

The search starts.

This function plays all the available stations in succession for a few seconds each.

Pressing the ▷ button again ends the search and the current station remains set.

Selecting a station from the preset list
By pressing the respective button 1 - 6, it changes to the station stored under the given position in the current storage group (e.g. FM1).

List of available stations

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

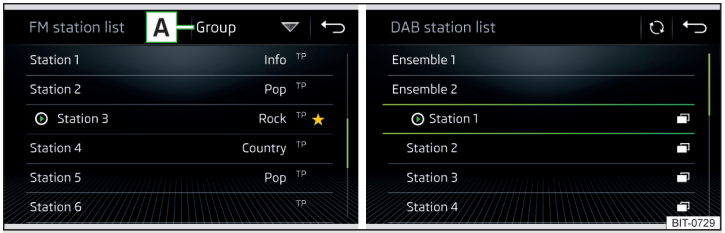


Fig. 136 **Example list of available FM/DAB stations**

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting range, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap the function surface ☰.
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **sort** (FM) the stations in alphabetical order, by group or genre, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 136 » !.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting range, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap the function surface ☰.
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **filter** the stations based on the program type (e.g. Music, Sport etc.) in the FM station list (with activated RDS function) and the DAB station list (with alphabetical sorting of the channel list selected), tap the function surface A » Fig. 136.

Information symbols

Symbol	Meaning
★	Radio station, which is stored on a preset button
▶	Currently played station
TP	Traffic information station
(e.g.) Pop	Type of program being broadcast (FM)
(e.g.) R2	Type of regional broadcast (FM)
	Signal reception is not available (DAB)
	The transmitter reception is not secure (DAB) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing)
	Stations with image broadcasting (DAB) (does not apply to infotainment Swing)

Refresh list

The station list is updated automatically in the **FM** radio range.

In the **AM** and **DAB**radio area, the update takes place manually by pressing the function button ↻ » Fig. 136.

! CAUTION

To sort the stations according to genre, the RDS and AF functions must be switched on. These functions can be switched on/off in the main *Radio* menu in the FM band by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

Preset buttons for your favourite stations

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

In every broadcasting range, there are station buttons available to store preferred stations C, which are split into groups E » Fig. 134 *on page 113*.

› To **save a station in the main** *Radio* menu, hold down the desired function surface C until an acoustic signal sounds.
› To **save a station in the station list**, keep the function surface of the desired station held down, select the memory group, and then tap the desired station button.

Presets for preferred stations

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

Storing manually

› Select a preset group (e.g. **FM1**).
› Press and hold one of the preset buttons 1 - 6.

The station is stored in the selected position.

Storage is confirmed by an acoustic signal and by the display of the station button number in the status line of the display.

Automatic storage

› Press and hold button RADIO.

In the Infotainment display, the following text appears **AutoStore ...** and in the current storage group (e.g. FM1), six radio stations are stored with the strongest signal.

Station logos - Amundsen

In the Infotainment memory, you can store station logos, which are assigned automatically by the device when stations are stored under preset buttons.

Assigning a station logo automatically

› To **deactivate/activate**, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Autostore station logos**.

Assigning a station logo manually

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Removing a station logo manually

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you wish to remove a logo.

Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 500x500 pixels.

Station logos - Swing

The station button for a preferred station can contain the name and the station logo.

Assigning a station logo

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Removing a station logo

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you wish to remove a logo.
› **or**: the function surface **All areas** to delete the logos of all station buttons at the same time.
› Confirm/cancel the removal.

Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, png.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 400x240 pixels.

TP Traffic program

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing

› To **activate/deactivate** traffic monitoring, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap on function surface → **Traffic program (TP)**.

Applies to Infotainment Blues

› To **activate/deactivate** traffic monitoring, go to the *Radio* menu and press button EXTRAS → **TP** → **Yes/No**.

During a traffic announcement, it is possible to cancel the current announcement or to deactivate traffic monitoring.

Note

- If the station that is currently set does not transmit traffic reports or the signal is not available, then Infotainment automatically searches in the background for another TP station.
- During playback in the *Media* menu or a station in the AM radio range, traffic news is received from the previously selected FM radio range.

Media

Operation

Main menu

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

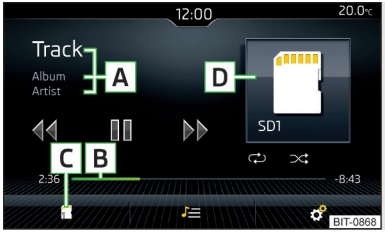


Fig. 137
Media: main menu

› To **display** the main menu, press button MEDIA.
› **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ♫.

Main menu » Fig. 137

A Information on the track being played
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Audio source selection
D Selected audio source / album image / album overview
♪≡ Depending on the audio source type:
- ▶ Folder/track list
- ▶ Multimedia database

Settings for the *Media* menu » page 105 or » page 110

Note

▪ Information concerning the track being played appears on the screen, if it is stored as a so-called ID3 Tag on the audio source. If no ID3 tag is available, only the track name is displayed.
▪ The remaining playback time indicated does not correspond to the actual remaining playback time for tracks with variable bit rates (VBR).

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Blues.

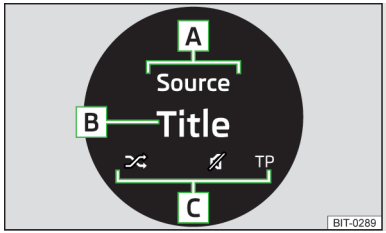


Fig. 138
Display

› To **display** the main menu, press button MEDIA.

Description of the display » Fig. 138

A Information line
B Name of the track being played
C Status bar

Select audio source

▶ Press the MEDIA button again.

The Infotainment only switches between connected audio sources with playable content.

The Infotainment can detect a maximum of 1024 directories in the connected audio sources and can play back a maximum of 6500 files. The Infotainment can play a max 1024 files from a directory.

Adjusting

▶ With the *Media* menu open, press button EXTRAS » page 112.

Symbols in the information line A

Symbols in the status bar C

Playback control - Amundsen

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 137 *on page 117* after 3 seconds from the start of track playback
Fast-rewind within the track	Hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the track	Hold ▷▷
Play the previous track	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 137 *on page 117* within 3 seconds of the start of track playback
Play the next track	Tap ▷▷
	Finger movement to the left of the screen area A » Fig. 137 *on page 117*
Switch random playback from the current album or folder on/off	Tap ⤮
Switch repeat playback from the current album or folder on/off	Tap ⟲
Switch repeat playback of specific track on/off	Tap ⟲1

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 137 *on page 117*.

Playback control - Swing

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous track	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Fast-rewind within the track	Hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the track	Hold ▷▷
Play the next track	Tap ▷▷
Switch random playback from the current album or folder on/off	Tap ⤮
Switch repeat playback from the current album or folder on/off	Tap ⟲
Switch repeat playback of specific track on/off	Tap ⟲1

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 137 *on page 117*.

Playback control - Blues

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Press ⏯
Fast-forward within the track	Hold ▷
Fast-rewind within the track	Hold ◁
Plays the current track from the start	Press ◁ (3 seconds after the start of the track playback)
Play the previous track	Press ◁ (within 3 seconds after the start of the track playback)
Play the next track	Press ▷
Change to/to previous folder/play-list of the current audio source[a)]	Press 1
Change to/to next folder/play-list of the current audio source[a)]	Press 3

a) The function is not supported by Apple devices.

Folder/track list

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

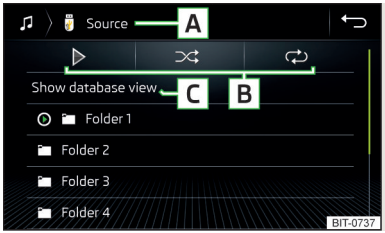


Fig. 139
Folder/track list

› To **display** the folder/track list in the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).
› To **playback**, select a track.

Folder/track list » Fig. 139

A Selected audio source/audio source folder (move within the folder by tapping the function surface for the folder)
B Folder/track playback options
C Display of multimedia database (only available in the source directory) (not applicable to the Infotainment Swing)
♪ Audio source selection
Folder
Playlist
▶ / ⏸ Track currently being played/track playback stopped
♪ The track cannot be played (tapping on the function surface shows the cause).

Note

▪ In the list, the first 1000 entries (tracks, directories etc.) with the oldest creation date are displayed.
▪ The scanning speed of the folder/track list depends on the connection speed and volume of data.

Multimedia database

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

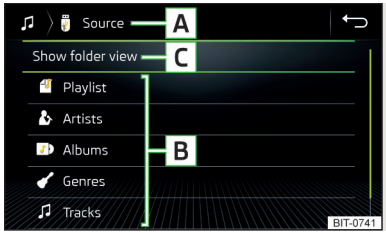


Fig. 140
Multimedia database

› To **display** the multimedia database, go to the main *Media* menu and tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).

The audio files are sorted by their properties into individual categories B.

› To **playback**, select the category and then the track.

Multimedia database » Fig. 140

A Selected audio source/Selected category/Folder of the audio source
B Sorting categories
C Display of folder/track list (only available in the source directory)
♪ Audio source selection

Audio sources

Introduction to the subject

CAUTION

▪ Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
▪ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
▪ When connecting an external audio source, the external source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed (e.g. enabling data transfer etc).

Note

The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

SD card



Fig. 141
Amundsen: insert the SD card



Fig. 142 **Swing / Blues: insert SD card**

Inserting

› **Insert** the SD card in the slot in the direction of arrow (with the cut end facing right), until it “locks into place” » Fig. 141 or » Fig. 142.

Removing

› Before **removing** the SD card, go to the main *Media* menu and tap function surface → Tap on **Remove safely**.
› Push down on the inserted SD memory card. The SD card “jumps” into the eject position.

CAUTION

- Do not use an SD card with a broken write protection “slide” - there is a risk of damage to the SD card reader!
- When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB input

Installation location of the USB input and information regarding its use » page 74.

At the USB input, an audio source can be connected directly or via a connecting cable.

› To **connect**, insert the USB audio source into the appropriate input.
› To **disconnect** the USB, go to the main *Media* menu and tap on the function surface → Tap on **Remove safely**.
› Disconnect the audio source from the corresponding USB input.

Charging a USB audio source

With the ignition, the charging process starts automatically after the USB audio source is connected (applies to audio sources where charging via the USB connector is possible).

The charging efficiency can differ compared to charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected external device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not recognise that they are being charged.

CAUTION

USB extension cables or reducers may impair the function of the connected audio source.

Note

We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

AUX input

Installation location of the AUX input » page 74.

› To **connect**, insert the plug of the AUX audio source into the appropriate connector.
› To **disconnect**, pull the plug out of the AUX audio source.

CAUTION

- The AUX input must only be used for audio devices!
- If the external audio source connected to the AUX input is equipped with an adapter for external power supply, the sound may be impaired.

Note

- The 3.5 mm stereo jack plug is used for the AUX input.
- We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Bluetooth® player

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

The Infotainment system allows you to play back audio files from a connected Bluetooth® player using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With the Infotainment system, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

Connecting/disconnecting

› To **connect** the Bluetooth® player to the Infotainment system, follow the same instructions as for pairing the Infotainment system with a telephone » page 129.
› To **disconnect** the Bluetooth® player, end the connection in the list of paired external devices » page 129.

Replacing the Bluetooth® player (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

To replace a Bluetooth® player, which is also connected to the Infotainment system as a telephone, a corresponding information message will be displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› End the connection to the currently connected Bluetooth® player and repeat the pairing procedure » page 129, *Managing paired external devices*.

CAUTION

If an external device is connected to the Infotainment system using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

WLAN

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The Infotainment system allows you to play audio files from one of the external devices connected to the Infotainment WLAN.

› Connect an external device that supports the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance), with Infotainment WLAN» page 135.
› If necessary, start the UPnP application (Universal Plug and Play) in the connected device, which allows playback.
› Select the audio source **WLAN**.

Supported audio sources and file formats - Amundsen

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl m3u8 asx
WAV	wav	Defined by the format (approx. 1.5 Mbit/s)		
MPEG-1; 2 and 2,5 Layer 3	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	
MPEG-2 and 4	aac; mp4; m4a			
FLAC; OGG Vorbis	flac; ogg	Defined by the format (approx. 5.5 Mbit/s)		

Audio sources sub-divided into areas using the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats – Swing

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
Bluetooth® Player	-	-	Bluetooth protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.4)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2,5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

Audio sources sub-divided into areas using the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats – Blues

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD; SDHC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2,5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

Audio sources sub-divided into areas using the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Images

Image viewer

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.



Fig. 143
Pictures: main menu

› To **display** the main menu, press MENU, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 143

A Select the image source
Folder/image list
Display the previous image
Switch on the slideshow
Switch off the slideshow
Display the next image
Images menu settings » page 105
Rotate the image 90° anticlockwise
Rotate the image 90° clockwise
Display the original image size while retaining the aspect ratio
Guidance to GPS coordinates (the display only occurs if the image contains GPS coordinates) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 150

Controlling viewed images

Function	Action
Display the next image	Finger movement across the screen to the left (with initial representation)
	Tap ▷▷
Display the previous image	Finger movement across the screen to the right (with initial representation)
	Tap ◁◁
Increase the image size	Touch the screen with two fingers and pull apart
	Turn the knob to the right
Reduce the image size	Touch the screen with two fingers and close together
	Turn the knob to the left
Move the image with an enlarged display	Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction
Rotate by 90 °	Touch the screen with two fingers and move clockwise or anti-clockwise (only available with initial representation)
	Tap or
Maximum magnification of display	Double tap on the screen
Display the original image size while retaining the aspect ratio	Double tap on the screen again
	Press the knob

CAUTION

Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Supported image file formats and sources

Supported image sources

Source	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB stick; HDD (without any special software)	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	

Supported file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. resolution (Megapixels)
BMP	bmp	4
JP(E)G	jpg; jpeg	4; 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

Note

- The max. supported image size is 20 MB.
- The images sources structured into areas in accordance with the GPT standards (GUID partition table) are not supported by Infotainment.

Media Command

Using the system

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

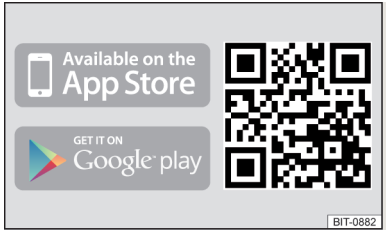


Fig. 144
ŠKODA Media Command application

The Media Command function allows you to control the playback of audio files or videos in up to two **tablets** that are connected to the Infotainment system via WLAN **in the Infotainment system**.

The Media Command function enables operation of tablets with the Android or iOS operating system.

The prerequisite for the Media Command function is that data transmission is activated and that operation of the Infotainment system via the application is approved » page 98.

Connecting a tablet to the Infotainment system

› Switch on the Infotainment hotspot (press button MENU and then tap function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**).
› Turn on WLAN in the tablet.
› Establish a WLAN connection in the tablet » page 135, *Connecting via WLAN*.
› In the tablet, start the ŠKODA Media Command application.

ŠKODA Media Command application

The application is available in the App Store and Google Play online shops.

Information regarding the application and the option to download the application can be found on a website that can be opened by reading the QR code » Fig. 144.

CAUTION

- If several devices are connected to the Infotainment system by means of WLAN, there is the danger of WLAN overloading and thus also the inability of Media Command to function properly.
- High-definition video playback (e.g. HD) may cause playback problems or problems connecting the tablets to the Infotainment system.

Main menu

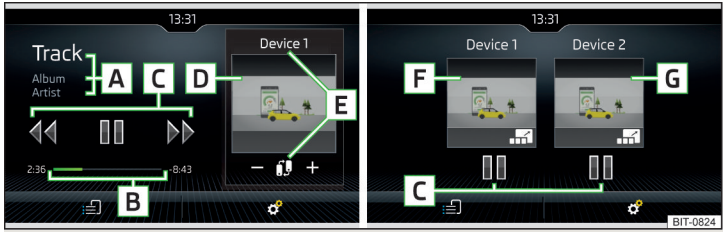


Fig. 145 **One tablet / two tablets**

› To **display** the main *Media Command* menu, press the MENU button, then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 145

- **A** Information on the track being played
- **B** Playback timeline with a slider
- **C** Playback control
- **D** Image from the video being played back
- **E** Name of the tablet used/Switch to main menu of two tablets (when icon displayed)
- **– / +** Increase/decrease the tablet volume
- **F** Display of main menu and operation of first tablet (symbol)
- **G** Display of main menu and operation of second tablet (symbol)
- Playback source selection
- WLAN settings » page 104

Selecting the source and controlling playback

› To **select the playback source**, go to the main menu and tap the function surface and select the source tablet.
› To **playback**, select the category and then the track.

If two tablets are connected, track playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback can be controlled via the Infotainment system or on each tablet, independently of each other. This means there is an option to play back different tracks on the tablets at the same time.

Playback control

Function	Action
Play/Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Play the previous track	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Play the next track	Tap ▷▷

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline **B** » Fig. 145 *on page 126*.

Note

Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos from an SD card inserted in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

Supported file formats

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	XVID	✓	✕

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Audio	MPEG-1;2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	AAC	✓ (4.1+)	✓
	M4A	✓ (4.1+)	✓
	OGG	✓	×
	FLAC	✓	×
	WAV	✓ (4.1+)	✓

Telephone

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

The general binding country-specific regulations for operating mobile telephones in the vehicle must be observed.

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

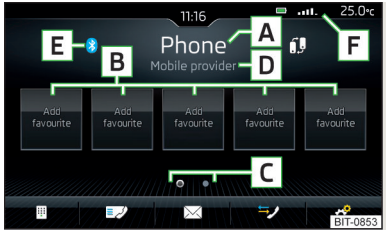


Fig. 146
Phone: main menu

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to the Infotainment system.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.
› **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 146

A Name of the main telephone
B Preset station buttons for favourite contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)
E Symbol of the main telephone (tap to display the list of paired telephones)
Swap the main telephone and the additional telephone
Enter the telephone number

- List of contacts
- Menu with text messages (SMS)
- Call list
- Settings for the *Telephone* menu » page 106

Symbols in the status bar

- F Signal strength of the telephone service network
- Charge status of the telephone battery
- Missed call
- Current call
- Incoming SMS
- PIN PIN code of the SIM card was not entered

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

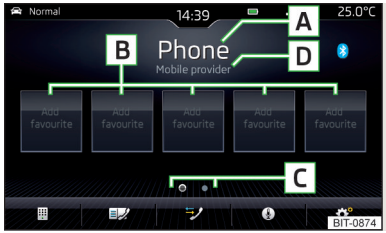


Fig. 147
Phone: main menu

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to the Infotainment system.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.

To display the *Telephone* main menu if a different menu is displayed, which was open last, press the PHONE button again.

Main menu » Fig. 147

- A Name of the main telephone (tap to display the list of paired telephones)
- B Preset station buttons for favourite contacts
- C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
- D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)
- Enter the telephone number
- List of contacts » page 130
- Call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when missed is displayed)
- Starting voice control of the connected phone (e.g. Apple Siri, Google Voice)
- Settings for the *Telephone* menu » page 111

Symbols in the status bar

- Signal strength of the telephone service network
- Charge status of the telephone battery
- Missed call
- Current call

Pairing and connecting

Introduction to the subject

To connect a telephone to the Infotainment system, the two devices must be paired via Bluetooth®.

Depending on the Infotainment model, up to 20 external devices can be paired with the device. After the maximum number is reached, the pairing of the next external device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Connection to an already paired telephone is established automatically after the ignition is switched on. Or, it is sufficient to search for the phone in the list of paired devices.

The range of the telephone connection to the Infotainment system is limited to the passenger compartment.

Compatibility and update

By scanning the QR code » Fig. 119 *on page 92* **or** typing the following address into the web browser, information about the compatibility of phones and available updates for the Infotainment's Bluetooth ®can be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Conditions for pairing

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment system and the telephone is switched on.
✓ The visibility of the Infotainment system and the telephone is switched on.
✓ The telephone is within range of the Infotainment system's Bluetooth® signal.
✓ The telephone is compatible with the Infotainment system.
✓ No external device is connected to the Infotainment system using Apple CarPlay.

Pairing and connection process

Pairing the telephone with the Infotainment system

› Find available external Bluetooth® devices in your telephone.
› Select the name of the Infotainment system.

The name of the Infotainment system can be checked in the *Telephone* main menu if you tap on the function surface → **Bluetooth** In the **Name:** menu item.

› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary).

The telephone is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of external devices that are already connected » page 129.

Pairing the Infotainment system with the telephone

› If **no** telephone is connected to the Infotainment system, press the PHONE button, then tap the **Find telephone** function surface or press the MENU button, then tap function surface → **Find telephone**.
› If **one** telephone is connected to the infotainment system, then, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the → **Find telephone** function surface.
› Select the desired telephone from the list of retrieved external Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary).

! WARNING

Do not pair and connect a telephone to the Infotainment system while driving the vehicle - there is risk of an accident!

Possible connection types

Depending on the number of connected Bluetooth® devices and the connection type, the following functions are available.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

First device (main telephone)	Second device (additional telephone)
HFP (incoming/outgoing calls), SMS, telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a)]

a) Only one external device can be connected to the Infotainment system as a Bluetooth® player.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

First device (main telephone)	Second device (additional telephone)
HFP (incoming/outgoing calls), telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	Bluetooth® player[a)]

a) Only one external device can be connected to the Infotainment system as a Bluetooth® player.

Managing paired external devices

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **Bluetooth** → **Paired devices**.

In the list of paired external devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual external devices.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

Symbol	Symbol colour	Function
	Grey	External device can be connected as a telephone
	Green	External device is connected as a telephone
	Grey	External device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player
	White	External device is connected as a Bluetooth® player

Applies to Infotainment Swing

Symbol	Symbol colour	Function
	White	External device can be connected as a telephone
	Green	External device is connected as a telephone
	White	External device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player
	Green	External device is connected as a Bluetooth® player

Connection set-up

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles.

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to the Infotainment system, then the Infotainment system will display messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) during the connection process.

Disconnection

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles.

Deleting the paired external device

▶ To delete, tap on one of the following function surfaces.

Delete all or **All areas** - Delete all external devices
- Delete the desired external device

▶ Confirm the deletion by tapping on the function surface **Delete**.

Telephone functions

Enter telephone number and select

Entering a telephone number and dialling

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface .

Function surfaces of the numeric keypad

Enter the last dialled number/dial the telephone number entered
SOS / SOS Emergency call (only applies to some countries)
Breakdown call in case of breakdown
/ Information call (for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand)
Choose the mailbox number (the function is not supported for Infotainment Swing)
Delete the last number entered
/ Display the function surfaces < > for movement of the cursor in the input line

Searching for a contact using the numeric keypad

The numeric keypad can also be used to search for a contact.

For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numeric keypad.

Voicemail box (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

▶ To select the voice mailbox number, tap the function surface .

If the voicemail number was not imported or entered, then this can be entered or changed as follows.

▶ In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **User profile** → **Mailbox number:**.
▶ Enter the number of your voice mailbox.

List of telephone contacts

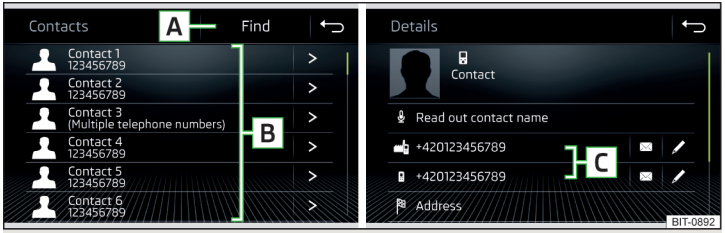


Fig. 148 **List of telephone contacts / contact details**

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface and a list of telephone contacts will be displayed » Fig. 148.

If the main telephone is connected to the Infotainment system, the telephone contacts from the telephone are used.

Function surfaces

A Contact search

B Dial a number in the telephone contact list (if a telephone contact contains several telephone numbers, a menu containing the telephone numbers assigned to this contact is displayed after the contact is selected)

> Display the contact details

C Select the telephone number in the contact details

Edit the telephone number of the contact before dialling

Infotainment Amundsen:

The contact name can be read out by the Infotainment system's generated voice

Open the menu for sending a text message (SMS)

Infotainment Amundsen:

Start the route guidance to the contact address

Import list

After the main telephone is connected to the Infotainment system for the first time, the process for importing the telephone contacts into the device memory starts. The import can take several minutes.

The Infotainment system's telephone book contains 2000 free memory locations for imported telephone contacts. Each contact can contain up to 5 telephone numbers.

The number of imported contacts can be determined in the menu item → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**

If an error occurs during the import, a corresponding message appears on the screen.

Refresh list

When the telephone reconnects with the Infotainment system, the list is automatically updated.

The list can be refreshed manually as follows.

▶ In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

Management of preferred contacts (favourites)



Fig. 149
Favourite contacts

Assigning favourites

› In the main menu *Telephone*, **tap on** the desired function surface A » Fig. 149.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Connecting to a favourite

The function surfaces for preferred contacts allow you to dial the contact telephone numbers immediately.

The favourites are provided in two storage groups.

› To **Change storage group**, tap on the function surface B » Fig. 149.
› To **dial**, tap the assigned function surface A » Fig. 149.

Changing allocated favourites

› In the main *Telephone* menu, **press and hold** the desired function surface A » Fig. 149.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Deleting a favourite

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **User profile** → **Manage favourites**.
› Tap the desired function surface of the preferred contact and confirm the deletion.

You can delete all contacts by tapping on the function surface **Delete all / All areas** and confirming the delete process.

Function surface for emergency call SOS

If the vehicle is not equipped with the buttons for the Care Connect service » page 15, the position of the last function surface in the first group of favourites will show the function surface for an emergency call SOS . In some countries, this function may not be available.

The function surface can be assigned a different number for the preferred contact.

To restore the emergency number, it is necessary to remove the telephone from the list of paired external devices » page 129 and then to pair and connect again.

Call list

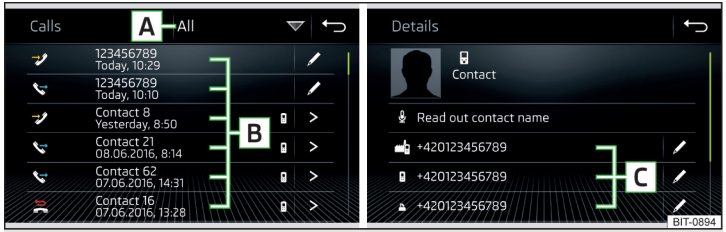


Fig. 150 **Call history / Contact details**

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface and a call list will be displayed » Fig. 150.

The call list can also be displayed during a telephone call.

Function surfaces

A Set the display depending on the type of call
- **All areas** - List of all calls
- **Missed calls/Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Selected nos.** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls / Received** - List of received calls

B Dial the contact number/telephone number

Call type symbols
- - Answered call
- - Outgoing call
- - Missed call

Edit the telephone number before dialling (not applicable to Infotainment Swing)

> Display the contact details » Fig. 150
- C - Dial the contact number

Telephone call

Depending on the conversation context, the following functions can be carried out.

- End dialling/reject incoming call/end call
- Accept an incoming call/return to a held call
- / Switch ring tone on/off
- Keep talking
- / Switch microphone on/off

Infotainment Amundsen:
- Set up a conference call
- Show caller details (if the contact is stored in the list)

Switch hands-free on/off (call to the telephone/switch to Infotainment)
- ▶ To deactivate the hands-free system, go to the main *Telephone* menu and tap on the function surface Tap on **hands-free**during a call.
- ▶ To activate the hands-free system, tap on the function surface during a call.

Conference call

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The conference call is a shared call with between three and six participants.

Start a conference call/invite additional participants
› Make the next call during a call/conference call.
› **Or:** take the new incoming call by tapping the function surface .
› To **initiate a conference call** or **return to a conference call**, tap on the function surface .

Ongoing conference call
During an ongoing conference call, the call duration is displayed on the screen. Depending on the context, the following functions can be selected.

- Hold a conference call - Leave the conference call temporarily (the conference call continues in your absence)
- Return to the held conference call
- / Switch microphone on/off

End conference call

Display conference call details

Conference call details

▶ During the ongoing conference call, tap the function surface .

A list of other conference participants is displayed. The following functions can be selected depending on the type of telephone.

Display participant details

Talk to a participant separately, outside of the conference call

End the call to a conference call participant

Text messages (SMS)

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

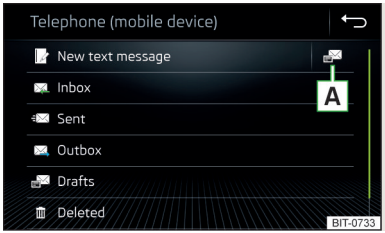


Fig. 151
Text messages main menu

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface ✉ and the main menu for text messages will be displayed » Fig. 151.

Depending on the type of telephone connected, you can perform the following functions.

A Open a list of templates for quick answers

New text message - Create and send the message

Inbox- Open a list of received messages

Sent - Open a list of sent messages

Outbox - Open a list of messages not sent

Drafts- Open a list of drafts (messages in progress)

Deleted- Open a list of deleted messages

New text message

Creating and sending the message

› In the main menu of the text messages, tap on function surface » Fig. 151 *on page 133*.

› Write a text message and confirm. A view of the text message is displayed.

› Tap the function surface / .

› Select the recipient of the message from the displayed contact list or tap the function surface and enter the telephone number.

› To add additional recipients, tap the function surface / .

› To send the text message, tap the function surface .

Viewing the text message

After opening the view message function, the following functions can be executed.

The text can be read out by the device's generated voice

The text can be stored as a draft

Open a list of templates with the option to replace the recorded text with the selected template

/ Open the contact list

The message can be edited, provided the text area is within the view.

Contact list

After the list has been opened the following functions can be executed.

Add a contact to the recipient list

Enter the telephone number

Return to message view

Tap on the **Find** function surface to open a list of available telephone contacts.

After selecting the contact number or entering the telephone number, the recipient list will be displayed in the screen.

Recipient list

The following functions can be executed by tapping on one of the function surfaces.

/ Display the contact list with the option of adding/removing additional recipients (to return to the recipient list, tap the function surface).

Remove a contact from the recipient list

Send the message
Return to message view

Received text message

When you receive a new message, the number of new messages received is displayed within the function surface ✉ and at the same time the symbol ✉ .

› To **open a list of received messages**, go to the *Telephone* main menu and tap on function surface ✉ → ✉ .
› Select a message.

The message content and the following menu is displayed.

The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
... Display a menu with additional options
- **Reply with template** - Reply using a template
- **Display numbers** - Recognition of telephone numbers in the message including the contact number (recognised numbers can be dialled directly or edited before dialling, or may be sent to this message)

Forward a message with the option to edit the message before sending
Reply to the sender via a message

Data connection

Internet connection

Connecting Infotainment Amundsen

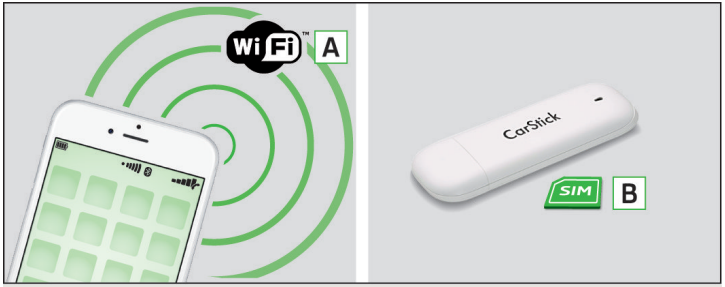


Fig. 152 **WLAN/Carstick**

Possible connection types » Fig. 152,

A Using WLAN, by connecting the Infotainment system to the hot spot of the external device » page 135, *Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device*.

B Using the **CarStick** USB device » page 134.

Connecting via the CarStick device

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The **CarStick** USB device can be purchased from the original accessories.

› Insert a SIM card with activated data services into the **CarStick** device.

The required dimensions of the SIM card can be found in the instructions enclosed with the CarStick ŠKODA original accessory.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Insert the CarStick into the USB input at the front » Fig. 79 *on page 74*,
› Wait approximately one minute until the red light on Carstick stays continuously lit (if the red lights up, then disconnect and re-insert the Carstick).

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK** confirm.
› **or:** the function area to save and confirm the PIN code.
› If necessary, set the required network of the data service provider.

If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

The parameters of the telephone service provider network can be set in the menu item MENU → → **Network** → **Network settings**.

CAUTION

If you insert a SIM card of the wrong size or in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the CarStick device.

Connecting via WLAN

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

WLAN can be used to connect to the Internet, to playback audio files in the menu *media* or for operating the Infotainment system using an application in the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

It is possible to connect up to 8 external devices to the Infotainment hotspot **and at the same time** to connect Infotainment to another hotspot.

Switching the Infotainment hotspot on/off

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch the hotspot on/off in menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.

Setting the Infotainment hotspot

The Infotainment hotspot is factory set.

The setting can be changed in menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

- **Safety level** - Type of access protection (always set to WPA2)
- **Network key** - Access password
- **SSID: ...** - Hotspot name
- **Do not send network name (SSID)** - Switch the visibility of the hotspot on/off

▶ To save the configured parameters, tap the **Store** function surface.

Connecting an external device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on WLAN in the external device and search for the infotainment hotspot.
› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.
› Confirm the connection.

Note

The name of the infotainment hotspot (SSID) and the access password can be found in menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device

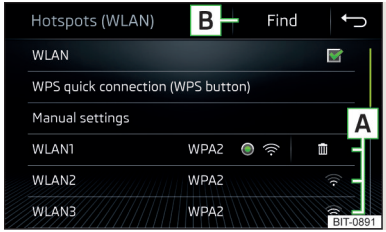


Fig. 153
Main menu of the Infotainment WLAN

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

› Switch on the ignition.
› If the Infotainment WLAN is not activated, activate it in the menu item MENU → → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.

In area A » Fig. 153, a list of available or previously connected hotspots is displayed.

The hotspot list can be updated by tapping the function surface B.

› Select the hotspot and enter the password.

If the hotspot is not visible, you can establish the connection to it manually. ▶

› Tap the function surface **Manual settings**.
› Set the required hotspot parameters.
› Tap on the function surface **Connect**.

Icons and function surfaces in the list of available hotspots A » Fig. 153

- Connected hotspot
- Signal strength of the connected hotspot
- Delete the hotspot connection parameters

Connect via WPS

It is not necessary to enter the access password when connecting via WPS.

Connecting the Infotainment system to the hotspot of the external device

› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device, switch on the hotspot, its visibility, and the WPS connection option.
› In the Infotainment system, switch on WLAN in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.
› Tap the function area **WPS fast connection (WPS button)**

Connecting the external device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment hotspot in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.
› Tap the function area **WPS fast connection (WPS button)**
› In the external device, switch on the WPS connection option.

SmartLink+

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Swing.



Fig. 154
Information on SmartLink on the ŠKODA websites

SmartLink offers the option of displaying and operating certified applications on an external device connected via USB on the Infotainment screen.

SmartLink supports the following communication systems.

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink®

Using the applications in the connected external device, you can use navigation, make a call and listen to music.

For safety reasons, the operation of some applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Scan the QR code » Fig. 154 **or** enter the following address in your web browser to open the website with information on the SmartLink system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartlink

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be operated via the Infotainment system, using your voice or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

To activate voice control for the connected external device, hold the VOICE or APP/☊ button or hold down the button ☊ on the multifunction steering wheel.

CAUTION

To establish the connection, the date and time in the Infotainment system must be set correctly. If the date and time setting is based on the GPS signal, then problems may arise with establishing a connection when the GPS signal reception is poor.

Note

- We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- With some connected external devices, it is necessary for the connected external device to be "unlocked" for trouble-free functioning of the SmartLink function.

Main menu



Fig. 155 **Supported communication systems / Example of available communication systems of the connected external device**

› To **display** the main SmartLink menu, press button MENU, then tap the function surface .

› **or** Press the APP button (applies to Infotainment Swing).

If no external device is connected, then a menu with supported communication systems SmartLink is displayed A » Fig. 155,

Main menu » Fig. 155

A Supported communication systems

B Available communication systems of the connected external device

ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink

⊗ Disconnection of the active connection

Settings of the SmartLink menu » page 106 or » page 111

Connection set-up / disconnection

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.

› Switch on the Infotainment system.

› Switch on the external device.

› For connection via Apple CarPlay, switch on the data connection and the voice control (Siri) in the external device to be connected.

› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 74.

› Select the type of supported communication system B » Fig. 155 *on page 137*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the main SmartLink menu, tap on function surface ⊗ .

› **Or** disconnect the cable from the USB input (the external device will be connected automatically when reconnected).

Note

Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

Android Auto

Introduction to the subject

A connection can only be established with a supported external device with the Android Auto application installed.

By connecting the external device with Android Auto, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the external device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth devices can be connected to the infotainment system.

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment in the Infotainment system, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Android Auto application. And vice versa, if **route guidance is currently taking place** in the Android Auto application, then there is the possibility that this will be **terminated** by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

A list external of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

Main menu

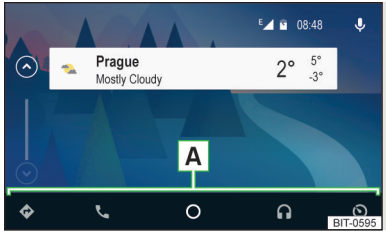


Fig. 156
Android Auto: main menu

Main menu » Fig. 156

- Navigation applications
- Telephone applications
- Overview of running applications, telephone calls, accepted text messages, tasks in the working directory, weather or similar.
- Music applications
- Display of other available applications as well as the option of returning to the main SmartLink menu
- Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

Next to the function surface in area A, the symbol appears and then, after tapping on this function surface again, a list of new applications is displayed.

Apple CarPlay

Introduction to the subject

A connection can only be established to an external device that supports the Apple CarPlay communication system.

By connecting the external device with Apple CarPlay, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected.

For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth devices can be connected to the infotainment system.

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

Some **phone features** of the connected external device can be operated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 51.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using the Infotainment system, then this is terminated by starting the route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application. And vice versa, if **route guidance is currently taking place** in the Apple CarPlay application, then this will be **terminated** by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

A list external of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

Main menu

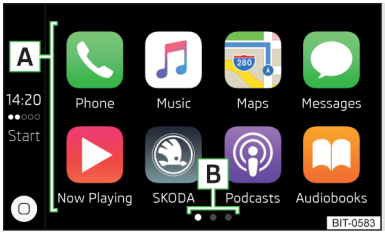


Fig. 157
Apple CarPlay: main menu

Main menu » Fig. 157

- A List of available applications
- B More pages with applications
- Depending on how long the function surface is pressed for:
  - **Tap** - Return to main Apple CarPlay menu
  - **Hold** - Switch on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink®

Introduction to the subject

A connection can only be established to an external device that supports the MirrorLink® communication system.

Applies to Infotainment **Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero**: if you would like to connect the device in the *phone* menu, the external device must be paired and connected before establishing a connection » page 128.

Applies to Infotainment **Swing**: by connecting the external device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices and the external device are automatically connected as the main phone. Depending on the device to be connected, a connection confirmation may be required.

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

Main menu



Fig. 158
MirrorLink®: main menu

Main menu » Fig. 158

- Return to SmartLink main menu » page 137
- List of running applications
- Display the contents of the connected external device
- Settings of the SmartLink menu » page 106 or » page 111
- A List of applications
- B More pages with applications
- Applications cannot be operated while driving

Display of the function surfaces during the running application

- Return to main MirrorLink® menu
- / Show function surfaces at the top/bottom (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- < / > / ∨ / ∧ Move the function surfaces to the desired corner of the screen (applies to the Infotainment Swing)

To show/hide the function surfaces, press the controller ⊙ (applies to Infotainment Amundsen).

function problems

If problems occur with the MirrorLink® connection, one of the following messages may be displayed on the screen.

- **Fault: transfer** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device
- **MirrorLink® audio is unavailable.** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device
- **MirrorLink® availability on this mobile device is restricted.** - it is not possible to use the connected device during the journey or the device only has limited availability (applies to Infotainment swing)
- **The mobile device is locked. Please unlock the mobile device to use MirrorLink®** - "unlock" the connected external device
- **Unable to start app or app not working.** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device

ApplicationŠKODA OneApp

Introductory information



Fig. 159
Information on the ŠKODA OneApp application on the ŠKODA websites

A mobile telephone connected to the Infotainment system allows you to edit and evaluate driving data in the ŠKODA One App application.

The ŠKODA OneApp application is available in the App Store and Google Play online shops.

Scan the QR code » Fig. 159 **or** enter the following address in your web browser to open the website with information on the ŠKODA OneApp application.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

For the full functionality of the ŠKODA One App application, data transfer from external devices must be activated.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen

▶ To **activate data transfer from external devices**, press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

▶ To **activate data from external devices**, press the SETUP button, then tap on function surface → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Note

Some functions of the application are not available in all countries or there is a function restriction during the journey » page 92, *Mobile devices and applications*.

Connecting to the Infotainment system

The mobile telephone can be connected to the infotainment system using the SmartLink function or via WLAN.

Connection via SmartLink

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish a connection via SmartLink (e.g. MirrorLink®) » page 136.
› In the list of available applications, select the ŠKODA One App application.

Depending on the type of external device connected, some applications can be started using voice activation, via the Infotainment or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Once connected, the contents of the application are displayed on the infotainment screen.

A possible connection between the mobile telephone and the Infotainment system via WLAN will be terminated after a connection is established using SmartLink.

Connection via WLAN (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish the WLAN connection » page 135.
› In the mobile telephone, start the ŠKODA OneApp application.

Disconnection

The connection can be disconnected in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the ŠKODA OneApp application.
› Disconnect the mobile telephone from the USB port or terminate the WLAN connection.

Navigation

Introductory information

Navigation - function sequence

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Route guidance is started as follows.

› Find/enter a new destination **or** select one of the stored destinations.
› Confirm the route calculation in the destination details or, if necessary, adjust the route options.
› Select the preferred route type, if this is requested by the Infotainment system.

A route is calculated and route guidance starts.

The route guidance is provided by means of graphical driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

There is an option to add additional destinations during route guidance, or to adapt the route.

If a traffic radio station is available, information concerning traffic delays is evaluated by the Infotainment system and, if necessary, an alternative route is offered.

If you deviate from the route, then a new route is calculated.

GPS satellite signal

Infotainment uses the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellite signal for route guidance.

Outside the range of the GPS satellite signal (e.g. in dense vegetation, in tunnels, parking garages, etc.), the Infotainment system navigates only with restrictions, with the aid of vehicle sensors.

The Infotainment system offers the possibility off showing the following information on the current geographical position of the vehicle and the satellite signal in the **Position** » Fig. 162 *on page 143* split screen.

Geographical longitude
Geographical latitude
Elevation
Number of received/available satellites

If no GPS satellite signal is available, no values are displayed.

Navigation data

Navigation data source
The navigation data is stored on an **Original** SD Card.

In order to ensure the function of the navigation, the Original SD card, with the navigation data, must be inserted in the respective slot in the external module » page 94.

If the original SD card is damaged or lost, a new original SD card can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

With a **Non-original** SD Card, navigation does **not work**.

Determining the version of the navigation data
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Version information**.

Updating the navigation data
We recommend that you update the navigation data on a regular basis (e.g. due to newly developed roads and changed traffic signs).

The information on updating the navigation data can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA websites.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Importing/updating the POI categories online

When Infotainment Online » page 13 services are activated, it is possible to download the POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect portal websites.

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Version information** → **Online update** → **Retrieve**.
▶ **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

A menu for the import/update of POI categories is displayed.

▶ Select the desired list entries.
▶ Tap on the function surface **Retrieve** and confirm the download process.

During the update process, the Infotainment system can be used without restriction.

Main menu



Fig. 160
Navigation: main menu

› To **display**, press the NAV button.
› **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface ⮜ .

Description of the function surfaces A » Fig. 160

Context-dependent:
Route guidance is deactivated - Search/enter a new destination
Route guidance is activated - The following menu is displayed:
- **Route details** - Displays the route details » page 155
- **Congestion ahead** - Manually adjusts traffic conditions » page 158
- **Enter destination** - Search for/enter a new destination/stopover » page 143
- **Stop route guidance** - Stops route guidance » page 155

The following menu is displayed:
- **Act. Store position** - Store the current vehicle position as a flagged destination » page 147
- **Routes** - Displays the list of saved routes » page 156
- **Destinations** - Displays the list of stored destinations » page 146
- **Last destinations** - Displays the list of recent destinations to which route guidance was carried out » page 146
- **Home address** - Route guidance to your home address » page 147

Search for POIs in categories , and
Map display options » page 150
/ Operation of *Media*/*Radio* playback

Display for the volume setting of the navigation announcements/repetition of the navigation announcement » page 154
Navigation settings » page 106

Map



Fig. 161
Map description

The following information and function surfaces can be displayed in the map. » Fig. 161

A Vehicle position
B Route
C Function surfaces for card use » page 150
D Function surface of the POI
E Function surface for the POI list
F Function surface for displaying a traffic incident » page 157
G Information on the maximum permitted speed
Destination position
Intermediate destination position
Destination position **Home address**
Favourite position

Information in the status line

Street name/street number of the current vehicle position
Distance to destination
Route to the stopover
Estimated travelling time to the destination
Estimated travelling time to the stopover
Estimated time of arrival at destination/stopover

Split screen



Fig. 162
Split screen

› To **activate/deactivate**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Split screen**.
› To **select content** of the split screen A » Fig. 162, tap on the function surface ▼ and select one of the following menus, depending on the context.

- **Audio** - Operation of **Radio/Media** playback
- **Compass** - Displays the current vehicle location in relation to the compass directions
- **Most frequent routes** - Display the three most frequent routes (if guidance not being carried out) » page 154
- **Manoeuvre** - Displays graphical driving recommendations (if route guidance is enabled) » page 154
- **Position** - Displays the geographical coordinates of the current vehicle location

Search for destination and enter

Selecting the type of destination search/destination entry

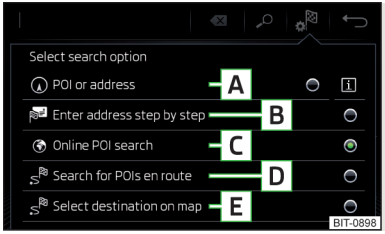


Fig. 163
Selecting the type of destination search/destination entry

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface → .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Enter destination** → .

Function surfaces » Fig. 163

A Search for a destination or POI (point of interest) by name » page 143
B Destination entry by address » page 144
C Online POI search » page 143
D Search for a point along the route (only works with active route guidance) » page 143
E Destination input via the map point or using the GPS coordinates » page 145

Search for destination/POI

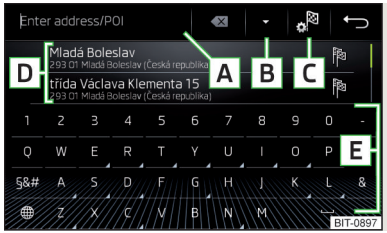


Fig. 164
Menu for the destination search

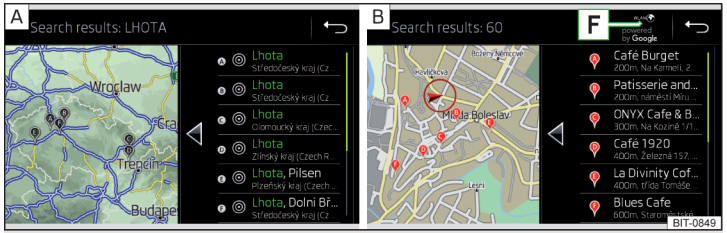


Fig. 165 **List of the searched destinations: in the navigation data / online**

The feature allows a full text search of locations or points of interest (POI) by entering keywords.

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface → .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface of one of the menu items for the destination search A, C or D » Fig. 163 *on page 143*.

Function surfaces » Fig. 164 and » Fig. 165

A Input line

B Depending on the search mode, the following symbols are displayed
- ▽ - Display of destinations found in the navigation database
- 🔍 - Display of destinations found online

C - Select the destination search/destination entry » page 143

D List of last destinations (if no character is entered) / List of visited destinations

E Keypad

F Status of online services

Find destination

▶ Enter the POI name or the POI category (POI) and, **if required**, the place and street name or house number/postal code.

A list of the destinations found is displayed in area D » Fig. 164.

▶ Select the desired destination and the destination details will be displayed.

▶ **Or:** tap function surface B » Fig. 164.

A map with the following symbols and a list of the destinations found is displayed.

Destinations found in the navigation data » Fig. 165 - A.

Destinations found online » Fig. 165 - B.

▶ Select the desired destination and the destination details will be displayed.

Enter destination using the address

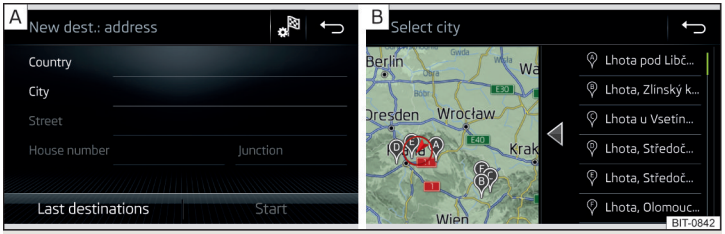


Fig. 166 **Enter destination using the address: main menu / list of visited locations**

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface → B » Fig. 163 *on page 143*.

Enter dest.

› Enter the destination address and then confirm » Fig. 166 - A.

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

Relevant names (e.g. place/street names) are offered in the entry line during entry, depending on the context. The location of the proposed destination can be displayed by tapping the function surface **Map**.

Depending on the number of places visited, a map with a list of visited places can be displayed automatically » Fig. 166 - B.

The map with the list of visited locations can be accessed manually by tapping the function surface .

Entering a destination via the map point and using GPS coordinates

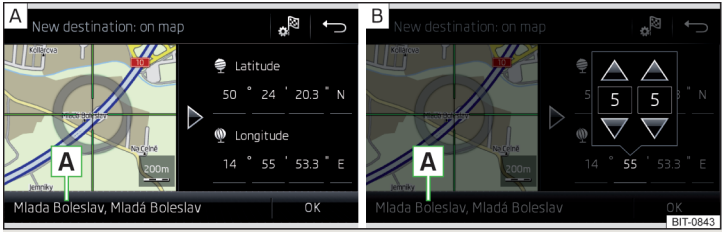


Fig. 167 **Enter destination: via the map point / using the GPS coordinates**

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface → E » Fig. 163 *on page 143*.

Enter destination via map point

› Touch the screen to move the desired destination into the cross-hair » Fig. 167 - A.

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

Entering the destination using coordinates

› Tap in the values of the GPS coordinates one at a time and adjust » Fig. 167 - B,

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

If information about the point entered is available in the Infotainment system's navigation data, this will be displayed instead of the GPS coordinates (e.g. address A » Fig. 167).

Entering a destination via the map point

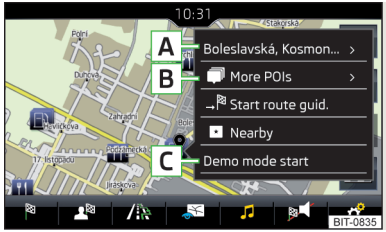


Fig. 168
Menu after tapping the map point

Tap on the map to display the symbol and a menu with the following menu items (depending on the context) » Fig. 168.

A Display the destination details » page 152

B Display the POI details/display the list of POIs (function surface)

Start route guidance to the selected point

Paste the selected point into the current route guidance as the next destination

Start route guidance to the favourite

Start route guidance to the home address

Destination search in the vicinity of the selected point » page 143

C Define the starting point for demo mode (if it is turned on) » page 153

Find petrol station, restaurant or car park

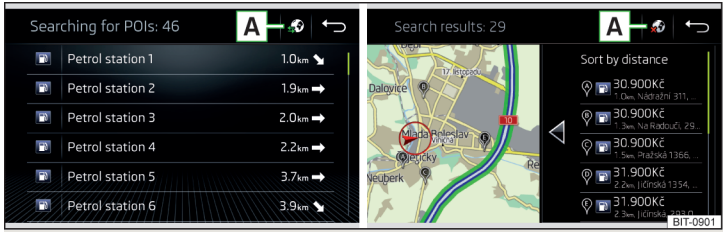


Fig. 169 **List of searched for destinations: in the navigation data / online**

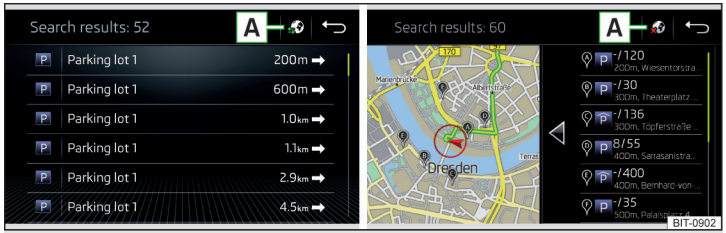


Fig. 170 **List of searched for car parks: in the navigation data / online**

The Infotainment allows you to find petrol stations, restaurants or car parks quickly in the navigation data as well as online.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface /.
› Tap the function surface of the desired category.
› **Or** press the MENU button, and then tap on function surface → or P .

Find destination in the navigation data
Depending on the context below, a list of POIs from the selected category is displayed.

- **No route guidance is taking place** - The nearest destinations in a radius of 200 km from the current vehicle position are displayed.
- **Route guidance is taking place** - Destinations on the route or near the route are displayed.

Find destination online
When Infotainment Online » page 13 services are activated, a list of POIs from the selected category in a radius around the current vehicle position is displayed, regardless of whether or not route guidance is taking place.

After searching for a destination, you can switch between the list of destinations found in the navigation data and the list of destinations found online by tapping one of the following function surfaces at position A » Fig. 169 or » Fig. 170.

Displays the list of destinations found in the navigation data.
Displays the list of destinations found online.

Note
With the → **Fuel options** → **Select preferred fuel station** function activated, the preferred fuel stations are displayed in the first three positions during the fuel station search.

Saved destinations

Last destinations

List of last destinations
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Last destinations**.

Details of the last destination
› In the main *Navigation* menu, press the NAV button.

If route guide is not taking place, the details of the last destination to which route guidance was carried out are displayed. **If route guidance is taking place**, the details of the final destination are displayed.

Last destinations in the destination/POI search menu
In the destination search menu, a short list of last destinations is show in area D » Fig. 164 *on page 143*.

Function surfaces in the list of last destinations
Find - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed when there are more than 5 entries available)
› - Display the details of the selected destination » page 152

Destination memory



Fig. 171 **Select list of stored destinations/categories of stored destinations**

List of stored destinations

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.
› Tap on function surface **A** » Fig. 171 and select one of the following categories of saved destinations **B** » Fig. 171.

All saved destinations
- ▶ - Flagged destination (vehicle position at the time of storage)
- ▶ - Stored destination (manually saved destination/destination imported in vCard format)
- ▶ - Favourite (destination with additional favourite property)

Favourites (the favourite location is shown on the map by the ★ symbol).

Telephone contact addresses of the connected telephone.

Online destinations created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application » page 149

Function surfaces in the list of stored destinations

Find - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed if there are several entries on the next page of the list)

> - Display of the destination details » page 152

Store target

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Last destinations**.
▶ Tap the function surface > at the desired destination to display the destination details.
▶ Tap on the function surface **Store** .
▶ Rename the destination if necessary and confirm storage.

Save “flagged destination” (current vehicle position)

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Act.** → **Store position**.
▶ By tapping again on function surface **Rename**, you can rename the flagged destination and store it as a destination in the destination memory.

Storing the next flagged destination will overwrite the last flagged destination. To maintain the existing flagged destination, it must be stored in the Infotainment memory.

Save destination as a favourite/cancel

It is not possible to store a contact address, a vCard or a target image as a favourite.

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.
▶ Tap the function surface ▼ and select the desired list of destinations.
▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit**.
▶ Tap the function surface **Favourite**.

Delete the destination

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.
▶ Tap the function surface ▼ and select the desired list of destinations.
▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit**.
▶ Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Home address

Define home address

When your home address is not entered, proceed as follows.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Home address**.
› Define the home address using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Change home address

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Define home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Edit**.
› Edit the home address or set one up using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Delete home address

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Import custom destinations

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 172
MyDestination application on the ŠKODA websites



Fig. 173
ŠKODA Connect websites

This chapter describes destinations which can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

You can create custom destinations using the ŠKODA application “MyDestination”, in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

Scan the QR code » Fig. 172 **or** enter the following address in your web browser to display more information on the “MyDestination” application.

http://go.skoda.eu/my-destination

Access to the ŠKODA Connect Portal can be found on the ŠKODA Connect website. You can open this by scanning the QR code » Fig. 173 **or** entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

Destinations in vCard format

In the Infotainment memory, you can import a custom destination in vCard format (*.vcf) from an SD card or a USB source.

Import

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the file of the custom destination.
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Import destinations (SD/USB)**.
› Select the source and confirm the import.

Route guidance

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› Find and select the desired imported destination.

Delete custom destination

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› Tap the function surface > Tap on the desired custom destination.
› In the destination details, tap the function surface **Edit** → **Delete** and confirm the deletion process.

POI categories created in the “MyDestination” application

Import/update

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the POI categories.
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)**.

If the same custom POI category name already exists in the Infotainment memory, then it will be overwritten during the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the imported POI category.

Guidance to the POI

› In the map, tap on the traffic obstruction symbol.

Details of the selected destination will be displayed » page 152.

Clear all custom POI categories

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete "My POIs"**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

POI categories created in the user profile in the "ŠKODA Connect Portal"

The custom POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The requirement for importing a POI category is that Infotainment Online » page 13 services are activated.

Importing POI categories

In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Version information** → **Online update**.

› **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .

A menu for importing/updating the navigation data and POI categories is displayed.

› Tap the function surface **POIs** → **Retrieve**.

If new POI categories are available, their quantity and file size is displayed by the Infotainment system.

› Tap the function surface **Start** to start route guidance.
› To complete the import, tap the function surface **Next** and confirm the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the imported POI category.

Route guidance to a destination in the imported POI category

› In the map, tap on the traffic obstruction symbol.

Details of the selected destination will be displayed » page 152.

Clear all custom POI categories

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete "My POIs"**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Destinations created in the user profile in the "ŠKODA Connect Portal"

The destinations created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The requirement for importing the destinations is that Infotainment Online » page 13 services are activated.

importing destinations

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› **Or** press the MENU button, then tap on function surface → .
› Tap on the function surface **Update**.
› If new destinations are available, then confirm the import.

If a destination was created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application and sent to the Infotainment system, a message regarding a new destination will be displayed on the Infotainment screen after the ignition is switched on, with the option to import the destination.

Route guidance to an online destination

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → .
› In the list of online destinations, find and select the desired destination.

Deleting online destinations

› To delete **all** online destinations go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Online destinations**.
› To delete **one** online destination, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface → **Destinations** → ▼ → → > → **To edit** → **Delete**.

Image with GPS coordinates



Fig. 174
Image with GPS coordinates

Infotainment enables guidance to the GPS coordinate data stored in the image.

› Press the MENU button then tap the function surface **Images**.
› Select the connected source and open the image with GPS coordinates.
› Tap the function surface » Fig. 174 in the image and a menu will open with the option to start route guidance.

The image can be obtained from an external device in which GPS coordinates are stored during the imaging process. This can be created and imported in the "MyDestination" application, if required » Fig. 172 *on page 148*.

Map

Map display options

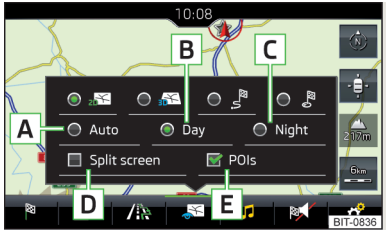


Fig. 175
Map display options

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface .

The following function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 175.

- 2D - Two-dimensional map display
- 3D - Three-dimensional map display
- Display of the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
- Display of the position of the destination or the next stopover on the map (depending on the setting for menu item → **Advanced settings** → **Status line:**)
- A Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)
- B Daytime map display
- C Night-time map display
- D Switch the split screen display on/off » page 143
- E Switch the display of selected POI categories on/off » page 145, *Entering a destination via the map point*

If the map scale of the 2D or 3D display is greater than 10 km (5 miles), then the map is automatically displayed as 2D and aligned in the direction of north. If the scale is increased beyond this value, then the map is switched back to the original representation.

Map scale



Fig. 176 **Function surfaces for changing the map scale**

It is possible to change the map scale manually or to activate the automatic scale change.

› Tap the function surface A » Fig. 176.

In area B » Fig. 176, function surfaces for changing the map scale are displayed.

Types of manual scale change

▶ Touch the screen with two fingers and pull them apart or close them together.

▶ Press the control knob ⊙ .

Activating automatic scale change

If the automatic scale is active, the map scale will change automatically depending on the type of roads travelled (motorway - smaller map scale / town - larger map scale) and the manoeuvre to be carried out.

▶ To **activate** the automatic scale change, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface → .

Tap the function surface is highlighted in green.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface is hidden).

▶ To **deactivate** the automatic scale change, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface → .

Tap the function surface is highlighted in white.

The function is also deactivated when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap on function surface A → .

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

Changing map orientation

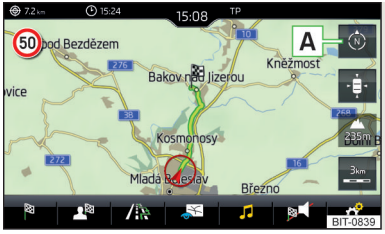


Fig. 177
Changing the map orientation

You can change the map orientation under the following conditions.

✓ The map is in the 2D display.

✓ The map is centred (the function surface is hidden).

✓ The map scale is max. 10 km.

With a map scale greater than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

You can only change the map orientation in the 2D display, provided the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface is hidden » page 151, *Map centring*).

With a map scale greater than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

› To **change the map orientation**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on function surface A » Fig. 177.

The map is oriented to the north

The symbol for the vehicle position rotates, the map and the polar star symbol do not rotate.

Map oriented to the direction of travel

The map and the Polar Star symbol rotate, the vehicle position symbol does not rotate.

Map centring

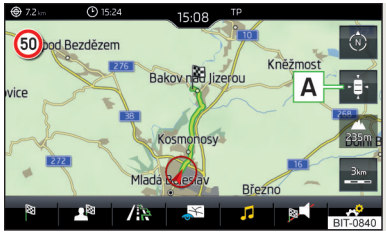


Fig. 178
Map centring

The moved map can be centred in the vehicle, destination or route position.

› To **centre the map**, tap on function surface A » Fig. 178.

POIs display

The Infotainment system offers the possibility of displaying POI symbols on the map on the Infotainment screen.

› To **activate/deactivate the display**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **POIs**.
› To **select the POIs to be displayed**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** and select the desired categories (max. 10).

Road sign display

The Infotainment system offers the option of displaying the traffic signs stored in the navigation data or detected by the front camera during guidance on the Infotainment screen G » Fig. 161 *on page 142*.

› To **activate/deactivate** the road sign display, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **map** → **Show traffic signs**.

For some vehicles it is possible to set an **alert when exceeding the permitted** speed limited by a **road sign**.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Speed warning:**.

When **towing a trailer**, we recommend that you activate recognition of road signs relevant to trailers.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Show road signs relevant to trailers.**

Route guidance

Introduction to the subject

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination. Additional **stopovers** can be added to the route.

Route guidance takes place as follows

▸ Through graphical driving instructions on the Infotainment screen and in the display of the instrument cluster.
▸ Through navigation announcements.

The Infotainment system tries to allow for continued guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated each time you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

! CAUTION

The navigation announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Destination details

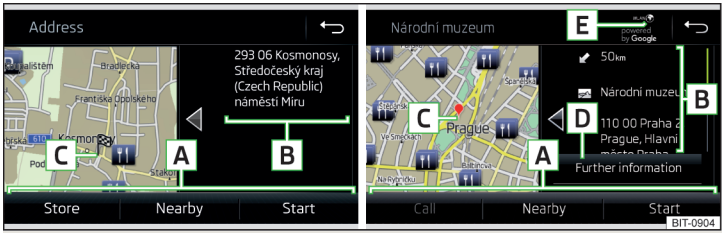


Fig. 179 **Details of the: destination searched for in the navigation data / online**

The following menu items and information are displayed in the destination details » Fig. 179.

A Area with function surfaces
B Detailed destination information
C Destination position in the map
D Detailed destination information (if available)
E Status of online services

Display the destination details

The destination details can be displayed in one of the following ways.

▸ While entering a destination.
▸ By tapping on the function surface > in the destination list.
▸ Press the NAV button in the main *Navigation* menu to display the details of the last destination.

Function surfaces
Using the function surfaces in area A, the following functions can be performed, depending on the context.

- Start/stop route guidance.
- Search for a nearby destination » page 143.
- Set route options.
- Store destination.
- Edit destination (the destination can be deleted, renamed or saved as a favourite).
- Dial the POI phone number (if the Infotainment system is connected to a phone » page 128, *Pairing and connecting*).

Route calculation and starting route guidance

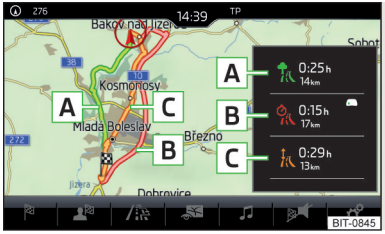


Fig. 180
Alternative routes

Routes are calculated based on the set route options. The route options can be set: → **Route options**.

Alternative routes
With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after calculation of a new route » Fig. 180.

A - calculate the most economical route with the shortest driving time and shortest distance travelled – the route is highlighted green

B - calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary –the route is highlighted in red

C - calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer driving time is required – the route is highlighted in orange

It is possible to select an already calculated alternative route before calculation of the remaining routes is completed.

Selecting the type of route will start the route guidance.

If no route selection is made within 30 s of calculation of all routes, route guidance will start automatically according to the preferred route type.

Route calculation for trailer towing

When driving with a trailer or any other accessory connected to the trailer socket, we recommend that you switch on trailer recognition, if necessary, to set the maximum speed for towing a trailer.

› To calculate the route when driving with a trailer, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap the function surface → **Route options** → .
› To set the maximum speed of the trailer, press the CAR button, then tap on function surface → **Driver assistance** → *Trailer recognition* → **Maximum speed for trailer**.

Demo mode

Demo mode provides a driving simulation to the entered destination. The function allows you to travel through the calculated route “virtually”.

When Demo mode is turned on, a menu for route guidance in Demo mode or in normal mode is displayed before route guidance starts.

› To **activate/deactivate**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Demo mode**.

When Demo mode is activated, the route starting point can be defined.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Define demo mode starting point**.
› Define the starting point by entering the address or the current vehicle position.
› The demo mode starting point can also be set provided demo mode is turned on by tapping on the desired map location and selecting the menu item **Start Demo Mode** » page 145, *Entering a destination via the map point*.

Graphical driving recommendations

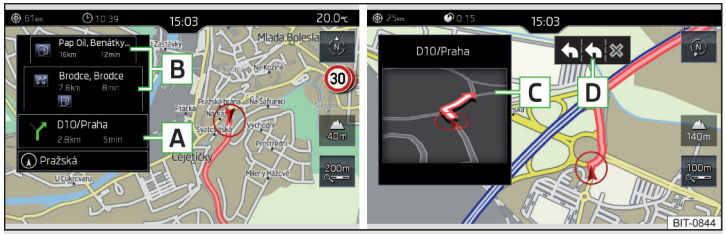


Fig. 181 **Driving recommendations/driving recommendation detail**

The graphical driving recommendations are displayed in the **Manoeuvre** split screen and in the instrument cluster display.

In the **Manoeuvre** split screen, the following driving recommendations are displayed » Fig. 181.

- **A** Street name/street number of the current vehicle position
- **B** Driving recommendations with street names/road numbers, the route and the travel time to the manoeuvre location
- **C** Driving recommendation details (displayed near the manoeuvre)
- **D** Lane guidance

In the **Manoeuvre** split screen, the Infotainment system also draws your attention to traffic obstructions received via TMC, as well as to motorways, car parks, petrol stations or restaurants.

Speed limits

With the → **Advanced settings** → **Note: national border crossed**, displays the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

These speed limits can be displayed by tapping on function surface → **Maximum speed** in the *Navigation* main menu.

Navigation announcements

The Infotainment system issues navigation announcements during route guidance.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity of the message (e.g., road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

The last navigation announcement can be repeated in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping on the function surface → .

The timing of the navigation announcement is dependent on the type of road and on the driving speed.

The type of navigation announcements can be set: → → **Navigation announcements**.

Note

Route guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Most frequent routes

The most frequently travelled routes are automatically saved by Infotainment. Of these, up to 3 routes can be offered, which best match the current time, day of the week as well as the vehicle position.

Route guidance to one of the routes used most frequently can be started provided **route guidance is not currently active**.

› To display the menu with the most frequently travelled routes, go to the split screen and tap on the function surface **Most frequent routes** → **Show on map**.
› Select the desired route.

The selected route is then calculated and route guidance starts.

The menu display in the split screen can be activated/deactivated in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping the function surface → **Route options** → **Most frequent routes switched on/off**.

The stored most frequent routes can be deleted in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Most frequent routes deleted**.

Note

Route guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Finish route guidance

Route guidance can be finished in one of the following ways.

› The final destination is reached.
› In the main *Navigation* menu by tapping the function surface → **Stop the route**,
› By turning off the ignition for longer than 120 minutes.

Abort route guidance

If the ignition is switched off and on again, then route guidance is continued in one of the following ways, depending on the stop time.

▶ Within 15 minutes - route guidance continues, taking the calculated route into account.
▶ From 15 minutes to 120 minutes - after confirming the message on the Infotainment screen, the route guidance continues, taking the calculated route into account.
▶ After 120 min - route guidance is cancelled.

Route

Route details

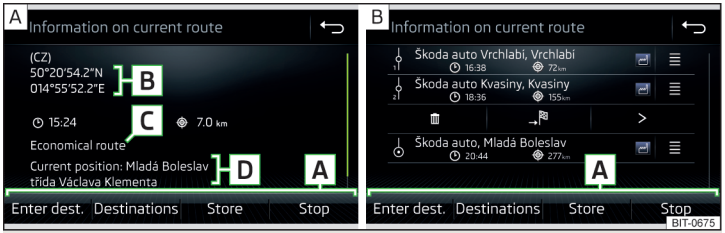


Fig. 182 **Route details: a route destination / several route destinations**

During route guidance, the **Route details** (information about the current route) can be displayed.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Route details**.

One route destination
In the route details, the following information is displayed at the destination » Fig. 182 - A.

A Area with function surfaces
B Destination information
Estimated time of arrival at destination/remaining driving time to destination
Remaining distance to the destination
C Chosen route type (economic, fastest, shortest)
D Current vehicle position (address/GPS coordinates)

You can adjust the display of the arrival time or the remaining driving time as follows.

▶ In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface Tap on → **Advanced settings** → **Time display:**

Several route destinations
In the route details, the following information is displayed at the respective destinations » Fig. 182 - B.

A Area with function surfaces
Stopover (with sequential number)
Final destination
Estimated time of arrival at destination/stopover
Driving distance to destination/stopover
Change positions of the destinations with each other
Delete the destination
Continuation of the route guidance from the selected target (previous stopovers are skipped)
> Display the destination details » page 152

Insert destination into the route
▶ In the area A, tap on the function surface **Enter destination** and enter a new destination.
▶ **or:** In the area A, tap on the function surface **Destinations** and select a destination from the list of saved destinations.

Each additional destination is added to the list as the first subsequent destination route.

Change positions of destinations with each other

▶ Press and hold the relevant function surface ☰ and move the destination to the desired position.

For destinations already reached on the route, the note **Destination reached** is displayed below the destination name. It is no longer possible to change the position of these destinations with each other.

Store route

▶ In area A, tap the function surface **Save**.
▶ Save the edited route as a new route or replace the existing saved route.

Einstellungen des Menüs Medien bzw. » page 156.

Stop route guidance

▶ In area A, tap the function surface **Stop**.

Route list

In the route list, it is possible to create, import, save or delete routes or start navigation.

New route

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface Tap → **Routes** → **New route**.

Insert a route destination in one of the following ways.

› Tap on the function surface **Enter destination** and enter a new destination.
› **or:** tap on the function surface **Destinations** and select a destination from the list of saved destinations.
› To save the created route, tap the function surface **Store**.
› To start route guidance, tap the function surface **Start**.

Route import

The requirement for importing the route is that the Infotainment Online » page 13 services are activated.

A route that has been created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website and sent to the Infotainment system can be imported into the Infotainment memory even **before switching on the ignition**.

If the route was created when the ignition was switched on and sent to Infotainment, Infotainment is not imported until after switching off (for at least 15 minutes) and after switching the ignition back on again.

› Switch on the ignition. When a new route is available, a message regarding the option to import this route appears in the Infotainment screen **automatically**.

If the user opts not to import the route immediately, the route can be imported **manually** later, as follows.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Routes** to check if a new route is available.
› **or:** Press the MENU button and then tap on function surface → .
› Tap the function surface **Import routes**.

If a new route is available, a message will be displayed by the Infotainment system.

› Tap the function surface **Retrieve** to start route guidance.

After being successfully imported, the route is displayed in the list of saved routes.

Managing saved routes

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Routes** .
› Choose the desired route, and then select one of the following functions.

Delete - delete the stored route
Edit - edit the route » page 155, *Route details*
Start - calculate the route and start route guidance » page 153, *Route calculation and starting route guidance*

Traffic reports

List of traffic reports

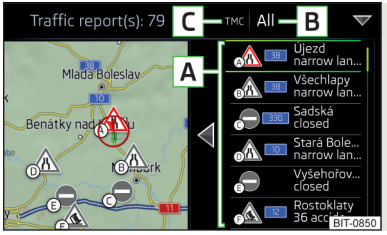


Fig. 183
List of traffic reports

The Infotainment systems enables the reception of traffic reports, which include information regarding traffic congestion, using TMC (Traffic Message Channel) or online (when Infotainment Online » page 13 services are activated).

› To **display the list of traffic reports**, press the MENU button then tap the function surface .

In the list of traffic messages and the map, a max. of 6 messages are displayed, that are provided with a letter and a traffic obstruction symbol (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) A » Fig. 183.

The traffic reports available on the route are indicated by a navigation announcement.

Source of traffic information
At position C » Fig. 183, the following symbols can be displayed.

TMC TMC Traffic Information (when the symbol is crossed out, the Infotainment system is out of range of any traffic information provider)

Online traffic report

Display options
- **Route guidance is not taking place** - All traffic messages are displayed.
- **Route guidance is taking place** - After tapping function surface B » Fig. 183 in the displayed menu, you can select all traffic messages by tapping the function surface **All areas, or** you can select only the traffic messages present on the route by tapping the function surface **Route**.

A traffic report may contain some of the following information.

- Symbol of the traffic obstruction
- Number of the road affected
- Name of the location affected
- Description of the traffic obstruction

Colour differentiation of the importance of the traffic obstruction in a TMC message
The symbol for the traffic obstruction (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) precedes the obstruction and the length of the obstruction is shown in the map on the right along the route.

Depending on the context, the symbol for the obstruction is displayed in one of the following ways.

No route guidance is taking place
- **Red** - All traffic obstructions

Route guidance is not taking place
- **Grey** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route
- **Red** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction
- **Orange** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will be recalculated and an alternative route is available

Colour differentiation of the importance of a traffic obstruction from an online message
The colour differentiation of traffic obstructions is dependent on the provider of the online traffic reports.

To set the traffic obstructions display, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap the function surface → Tap on **Map** → **Traffic flow settings**.

Update
The list of traffic reports is continuously updated by the Infotainment system.

Details of the traffic report

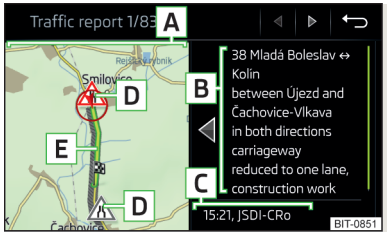


Fig. 184
Details of the traffic report

The details of the traffic message depends on the source of the traffic message.

› To **display** this, select the desired traffic report from the list of traffic reports.
› **or:** Tip on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

Depending on the context, the following information and function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 184.

A Map of the affected location
B Description of the traffic obstruction

C The time of arrival and information relating to the traffic report provider (if ŠKODA Connect is the provider, it is an online traffic report)

D Symbol of the traffic obstruction

E Length of the traffic obstruction

Dynamic route

The Infotainment system allows an evaluation of the traffic reports received during the route guidance. If the following conditions are met, a bypass route is calculated and the appropriate announcement is issued.

✓ The dynamic route function is turned on.

✓ The traffic obstruction included in the traffic information is on the route.

✓ The traffic obstruction is evaluated by the Infotainment system as being significant.

› To **activate/deactivate**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Route options** → **Dynamic route**.

Entering/removing a traffic obstruction on the route manually

If a traffic obstruction is detected during route guidance (e.g. traffic jam), this traffic obstruction can be entered into the route manually.

Once entered, the Infotainment system recalculates and provides an alternative route.

Enter traffic obstruction

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Congestion ahead**.

› Adjust the length of the traffic obstruction.

The traffic obstruction is displayed in red in the map to the right along the route.

Remove traffic obstruction

The traffic obstruction is removed from the route after completion of the route guidance or can manually be removed as follows.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Delete "congest. ahead"**.

Vehicle systems

CAR - Vehicle settings

Introduction to the subject

Does not apply to Infotainment Blues.

In the CAR menu, you can display driving data and vehicle information and can configure some vehicle systems.

Reset to factory settings

You can reset the factory settings in the Infotainment system in menu CAR → → **Factory settings**.

Note

Settings relating to the vehicle systems can only be made when the ignition is switched on.

Main menu



Fig. 185
Function surfaces in the main menu

› Press the CAR button to display the main menu with the following function surfaces » Fig. 185.

Select the following menu points
- **Journey data**
- **DriveGreen**
- **Vehicle status**

Operating playback - Radio/Media

Operating heated windscreen

Vehicle system settings

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- While driving with the engine stopped the ignition must always be switched on. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 163, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes the theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

Immobiliser
The immobilizer allows the engine to be started only with the original car key.

Malfunction of the immobiliser
If the immobiliser in the key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain that the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - lock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, then move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, as a result of which the steering lock should unlock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the car and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - risk of accident!

Switching the ignition on/off

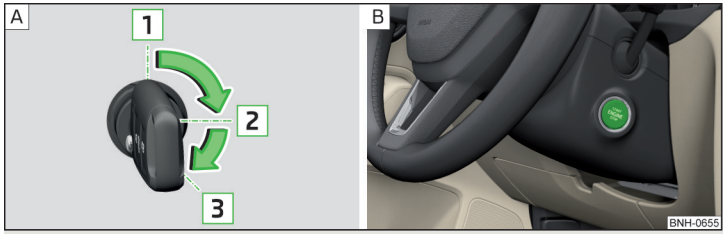


Fig. 186 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 186 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the» Fig. 186 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting/Stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » ! depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting the engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 186 *on page 160* A. Then release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after 30 s.

› On vehicles with**starter button**, press the button briefly» Fig. 186 *on page 160* - B, the motor will start automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines**, the glow plug warning lights up after the ignition is switched on. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Switching off the engine

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with**ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 186 *on page 160* A.
› On vehicles with**starter button**, press the button» Fig. 186 *on page 160* - B the engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey if the engine has been working at high revs over a prolonged period, but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the button pressed down» Fig. 186 *on page 160* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may (also intermittently) continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems with starting the engine - Vehicles with starter button



Fig. 187
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 159 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 187.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails (strong electromagnetic field) or is shielded (e.g. in an aluminium case).

START-STOP system

Introduction

The START STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, while others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

For this reason, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even when it has previously been manually deactivated with the A OFF button).

Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains switched on.

functionality

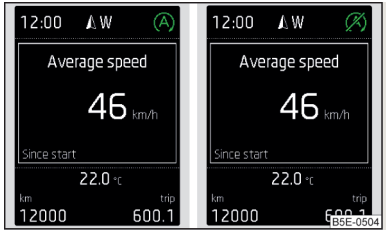


Fig. 188
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Requirements for the system to function correctly

The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.

✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

System status
The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt » Fig. 188.

Ⓐ The engine is switched off automatically; when moving off, the ignition process will be initiated automatically.
Ⓐ The engine is not switched off automatically.

The engine does not shut down when the vehicle stops, if e.g. the following applies.
- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine has shut down automatically but the system detects that the engine is required to run (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly) then the system automatically starts up the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed in the Infotainment screen, in the CAR → → **Vehicle status** menu.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened after the engine has switched off automatically, the engine will have to be restarted manually.
▪ No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
▪ For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Deactivate/activate the system manually



Fig. 189
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate** the system, press the button» Fig. 189.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol in the button lights up.

If the system is deactivated, it will be reactivated automatically after the ignition has been switched off and on.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Braking and parking

Introduction

The **wear and tear** on the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. In difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving), the condition of the brakes should be checked between services by a specialist garage.

Brake response can be slower if the brakes **are covered in moisture or, in winter, have a layer of ice or salt on them**. The brakes should be cleaned and dried by applying the brakes many times over » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads can occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes should be cleaned by applying the brakes several times over » !.

Before negotiating a **long or steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift down a gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If, nevertheless, there is a need for additional braking, it should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking warning - if it is necessary to brake hard, the system may cause the brake lights to automatically flash, to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be “run in” because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

If the **brake fluid level** is too low, it can cause **faults in the braking system**; the warning light (!) will light up in the instrument cluster » page 38, (!) *Braking system*. If the warning light does not light up, yet the stopping distance is perceived to be longer than before, the driving style should be adapted in view of the unknown cause of the problem, and braking kept to a minimum - seek the help of a specialist garage without delay.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not depress the brake pedal if there is no requirement to slow down. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - risk of accident!
- Only brake for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads should be followed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - risk of accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the front brakes could be in danger of overheating – risk of accident!

Handbrake

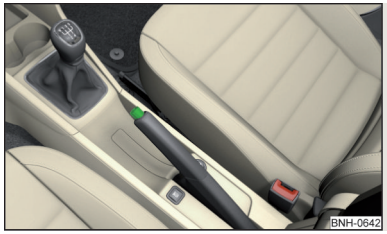


Fig. 190
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Releasing

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 190.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

! WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **gear 1** or **reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

▪ The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle in places where the underside of your vehicle could come into contact with flammable materials (e.g. dry grass, leaves, spilled fuel or the like). - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!
▪ When leaving the vehicle, never leave people unattended in the car who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake - risk of accidents and injury!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

CAUTION

When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Manual gear changing

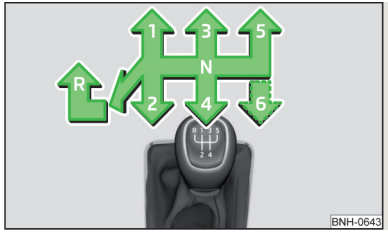


Fig. 191
The shift pattern

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

On the gear lever, the shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown » Fig. 191.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 47.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear to the clutch.

Engaging reverse gear

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R** » Fig. 191.

The reversing lights will come on once the reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gear shift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

Only a floor mat (ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range) which can be secured to the attachment points should be used in the driver's footwell.

WARNING

There should be no objects in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation can be impeded - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Do not accelerate when selecting drive mode prior to moving off - risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- If the vehicle stalls, with engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal or the parking brake. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle crawls forward.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P**. Otherwise, the vehicle could be set in motion - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Select selector lever position

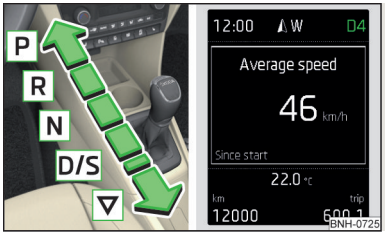


Fig. 192
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

The selector lever can be moved through shifting to one of the following positions » Fig. 192. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 165, *Selector lever lock*.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 192.

P **Parking** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - the position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sports programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

Selector lever lock



Fig. 193
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

The selector lever is locked in modes **P** and **N** to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Disengage selector lever from P mode or N

› Press the brake pedal and, at the same time, push the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 193.

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D / S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 220.

Note

If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being accidentally selected.

Manual shifting (Tiptronic)

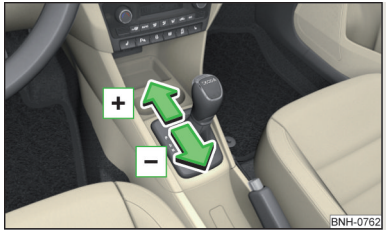


Fig. 194
Selector lever

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Gear changing

› To **change up**, tap the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 194.
› To **change down**, tap the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 194.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 192 *on page 165* display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 47.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over-revving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Start and drive

Read and observe ! and ! on page 165 first.

Moving off and pausing temporarily

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 165.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time (e.g. at a crossroads). However, the brake pedal should be depressed, in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Accelerate to max. speed during the journey (kickdown function)

If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the vehicle is in forward drive mode, the kick-down function is turned on.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to achieve maximum acceleration.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration (e.g. on slippery roads) can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running in and economical driving

Run in engine

During the first 1,500 km, the driving style is decisive for successful the running in process is.

During the first 1,000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

From about **1,000 to 1,500 km**, the engine can be pushed up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips on economical driving

Fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road and weather conditions, and similar such factors.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.

- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Engage the recommended gear » page 47.
- Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
- Reduce idling.
- Avoid short distances.
- Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained » page 206.
- Avoid unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack before driving if it is not needed.
- Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as necessary.
- Briefly ventilate before turning on the cooling system, do not use the cooling system with the windows open.
- Do not leave windows open at high speeds.

Drive Green function

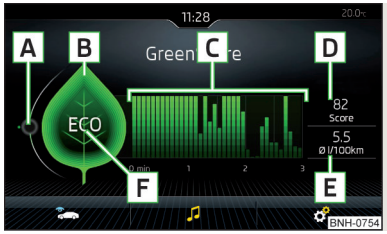


Fig. 195
Display on Infotainment screen

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information with regard to driving style.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap on the → **DriveGreen** function surfaces in the display.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking.

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols

The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

The journey does not take place in a free-flowing manner, avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking

4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving

Tap on the B leaf to display tips for economical driving.

Note

When resetting the single-trip memory “Since start”, the average consumption E, the driving assessment D, and the diagram C are also reset.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Driving Tips

Only drive on roads and terrain that are appropriate to the vehicle parameters » page 231, *Technical data*.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can cope with the conditions and the terrain.

WARNING

- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. to parts of the fuel or brake system).

Driving through water

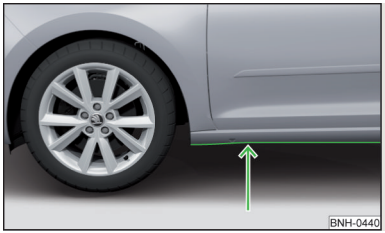


Fig. 196
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore, always determine the depth of the water before driving through water. The water level must not go above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 196.
› Drive at no more than walking pace, otherwise a wave may form in front of the vehicle, which could cause the water to enter into the vehicle’s systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- If water gets into the vehicle’s systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine) it can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

WARNING

- The assistance systems only serve to support the driver and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems so that you have the car fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor



Fig. 197
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

The radar sensor (hereinafter on referred to as sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle » Fig. 197.

The sensor is part of the Front Assist system » page 178.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow and the like).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights and the like).
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is covered or dirty, the corresponding message from the Front Assist system appears in the instrument cluster display » page 181, *Malfunctions*.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor has been damaged, deactivate Front Assist » page 180. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 37, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, ! in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

ESC improves vehicle stability in critical driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by the braking the individual wheels to maintain the direction.

If there is a TCS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

An ABS intervention can be noticed through **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** and distinct noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

MSR counteracts the tendency of the drive wheels to lock during downshifts or sudden deceleration (e.g. on icy or an otherwise slippery road surface).

If the drive wheels should lock, then the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (TCS)



Fig. 198
Button for the TCS system

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

The TCS prevents the drive wheels from spinning. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thereby, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 198 button.
› **or:** In Infotainment, press the CAR button, then tap the function surface → **ESC system: → ASR off**.

With **deactivation**, the warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activation

› Press the » Fig. 198 button.
› **or:** In Infotainment, press the CAR button, then tap the function surface → **ESC system: → Activated**.

With **activation**, the warning light is **extinguished** and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

▶ When driving with snow chains.
▶ When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
▶ When “rocking a car free” when it has become stuck.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes a spinning wheel if required and transfers the drive power force to the other drive wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance. ▶

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

When driving on slopes, Hill Start Assist (hereinafter referred to simply as the system) allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill on its own.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The system is active as of a 5% slope, if the driver door is closed. The system is only ever active on slopes when starting off in forward or reverse.

Multicollision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ There was a front, side and rear-end collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilisation system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 169 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The TCS is activated.
- ✓ The speed is greater than 60 km/h.

Further information » page 183, *Towing device and trailer*.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

The parking aid (hereinafter simply referred to as the system) uses acoustic signals on the Infotainment screen when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, etc., in front of or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 199 *on page 172* clean and free from snow and ice, and do not cover them with any objects of any kind, otherwise the functioning of the system may be restricted.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the functioning of the system may be impaired - “incorrect recognition of obstacles”.
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface → **Parking and manoeuvring**.

- *ParkPilot* – Settings for the parking aid
  - **Activate automatically** – Activate/deactivate the compact parking aid display (when driving forward)
  - **Front volume** – Adjust the volume of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Front tone setting** – Setting the pitch of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Rear volume** – Set the volume level of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Rear tone setting** – Setting the pitch of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** – Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid

Operation

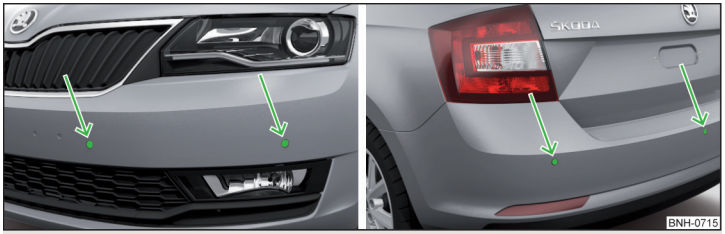


Fig. 199 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

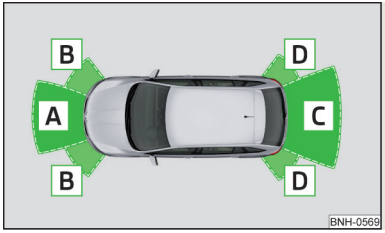


Fig. 200
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe and on page 171 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 199.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions are possible » Fig. 200.

▶ Variant 1: warns of obstacles in areas C, D.
▶ Variant 2: warns of obstacles in areas A, B, C, D.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 200	Variant 1 (3 sensors)	Variant 2 (7 sensors)
A	-	120
B	-	60
C	160	160
D	60	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm, a continuous tone starts to sound - danger area.

The acoustic signals can be set in the Infotainment system » page 172.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, only areas A and B » Fig. 200 are active in the system.

Note
The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Display Infotainment screen

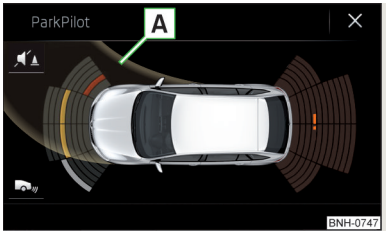


Fig. 201
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 201

A Road display.

× / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.

/ Switching audible parking signals on/off.

Change to rear-view camera display.

There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!

There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).

An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).

! System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 201 indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**, the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 202
System key (option 2)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

Activation
The system is activated when the reverse gear is engaged, or, in vehicles with **variant 2**, also by pressing the button P » Fig. 202.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol P illuminates in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **variant 2**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the P button or at a speed above 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Displaying an error
If a warning signal sounds for 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol P flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the P button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



Fig. 203
Infotainment screen: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 171 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment screen » Fig. 203.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment system » page 172.

Reversing camera

Introduction

The reversing camera (hereinafter the system) helps the driver to park and manoeuvre the vehicle by displaying the area behind the vehicle on the Infotainment screen (hereinafter only referred to as the screen).

WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of accident. For information on cleaning » page 193.

CAUTION
- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. For this reason, the screen display is only of limited use for estimating distances to vehicles behind.
- Some items, such as narrow columns, chain link fences or lattice, may not be represented adequately in terms of screen resolution.
- In a crash or damage, the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Note
The camera can be equipped with a cleaning system » page 68. The spraying is carried out automatically when the rear window is sprayed.

Operation

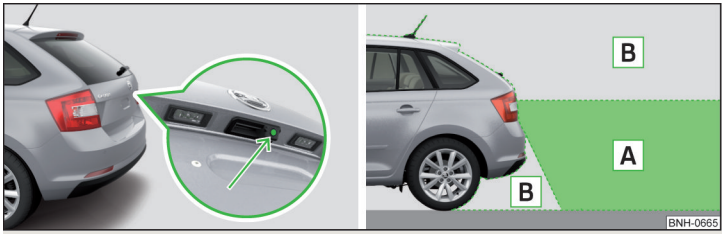


Fig. 204 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 174 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the boot lid handle » Fig. 204.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 204

A Detection range of the camera
B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Note

▪ The screen display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 202 *on page 173*.
▪ After disengaging reverse gear, automatic screen display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 172.

Guidelines and function surfaces

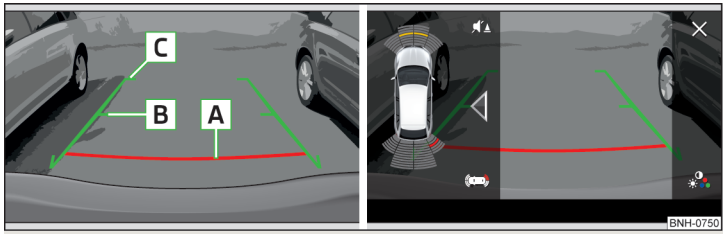


Fig. 205 **Infotainment screen: orientation lines/function surfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 174 first.

On the screen, orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 205

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces » Fig. 205

× / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment type: Switches off the display of the area behind the vehicle
Screen settings – brightness, contrast, colour
/ Switching on/off audible parking signals
◀ / ▶ Switching on/off the reduced park assistance display
Change to park assistance display

CAUTION

The objects shown on the screen can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
▪ Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.

- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The status where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Operation

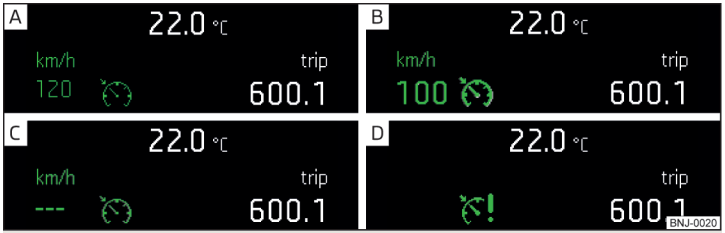


Fig. 206 **MAXI DOT display (monochromatic): Examples of CCS status displays**



Fig. 207 **Segment display: Examples of CCS status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 206, » Fig. 207

A Speed set, but control is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for starting the control

✓ The CCS is activated.
✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The current speed is higher than 20 km/h.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

WARNING

If the engine output or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must assume control of the accelerator and brake pedals!

Operation description

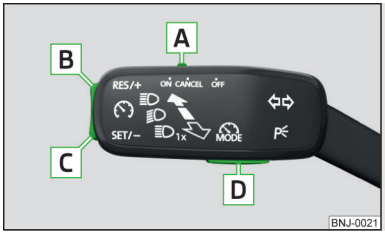


Fig. 208
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 176 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 208

A	ON	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	RES/+	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	SET/–	Start control / reduce speed
D	MODE	Switching between CCS and speed limiter

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

Once the controls are activated, the CCS maintains the vehicle at the set speed; the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Controls are automatically interrupted if any of the following occur.
- The brake pedal is operated.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- Through an airbag deployment.
- By pressing button D » Fig. 208.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- The control does not resume if the set speed is too high for the existing traffic conditions.

i Note

- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the button D » Fig. 208 during the control procedure this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

Speed limiter

Introduction

The speed limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

The speed limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the speed limiter prevents a set speed limit from being exceeded is referred to hereinafter as **Regulation**.

! WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, ! in section *Introduction*.

Operation

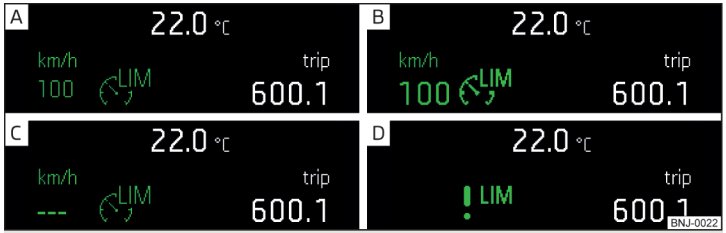


Fig. 209 **MAXI DOT display (monochromatic): Examples of speed limiter status displays**

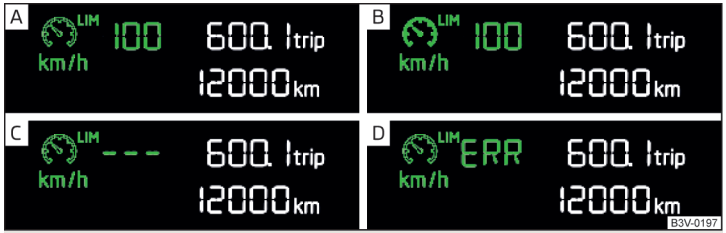


Fig. 210 **Segment display: Examples of speed limiter status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

Speed limiter status displays » Fig. 209, » Fig. 210

A Speed limit set, but regulation is inactive.
B Control is active.
C No speed limit set.
D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The speed limiter is activated.
✓ The current speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Description of operation

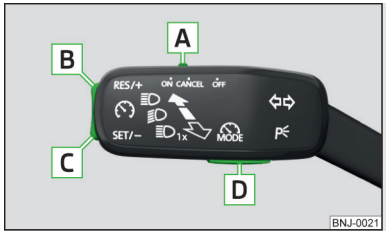


Fig. 211
Operating elements of the speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 211

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter) To activate the speed limiter, set the switch to position **ON**, then press D to operate.
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Disable speed limiter (set limit delete)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again [a]/ increase speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	**SET/-**	Start regulation / reduce speed - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
D	**MODE**	Switching between CCS and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

After starting the system, the current speed is set as the speed limit, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation

If, during the control, it is necessary to exceed the speed limit (e.g. to overtake), the accelerator pedal must be pressed fully.

When exceeding the speed limit (e.g. driving down a hill), an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

Note

By pressing the button D during the regulation, this is cancelled and the CCS is activated.

Front Assist

Introduction

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor » page 169.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Front Assist (ambient traffic monitor. sys.)* – Set the assist system for distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead
  - **Active** – Activate/deactivate the assis system
  - **Advance warning** - Activate/deactivate and set the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - **Display distance warning** - Activate/deactivate distance warnings

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

▶ Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
▶ Warns you of an impending collision.
▶ Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
▶ If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is activated » page 170.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in “sharp ”curves or with an ESC engagement » page 169.

Distance warning

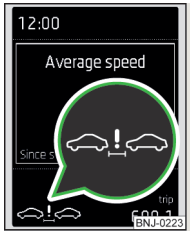


Fig. 212
Instrument cluster display: distance warning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is undershot, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 212.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking



Fig. 213
Instrument cluster display: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light » Fig. 213 appears in the display.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light » Fig. 213 appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning when in danger of a collision with a moving obstacle, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver does not respond to the acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Deactivation/activation

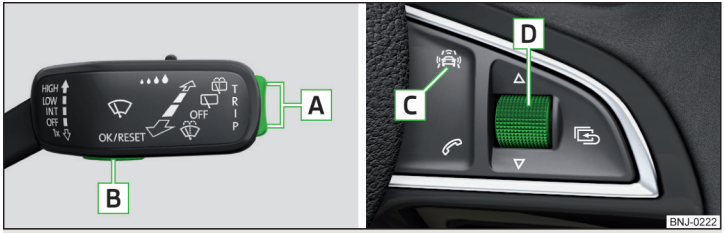


Fig. 214 **Buttons/dial: on the operating lever/the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 179 first.

The system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated/deactivated in the main menu » page 51, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 214	Action	Function
A	Hold up / down	Show Front Assist menu item
B	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 214	Action	Function
C	Press	Show Front Assist menu item
D	Press	Deactivate/activate system

Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment
In Infotainment, the entire system or the function advance warning and distance warning can be deactivated/activated» page 179, *Settings in Infotainment*.

If the distance-warning function was deactivated before the ignition was switched off, it remains deactivated after the ignition is switched on again.

WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 179 first.

If the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacle » Fig. 197 *on page 169*.

System unavailable
If the system is unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Fatigue detection system

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter simply the system) advises the driver to take a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected based on the driver's steering behaviour.

The system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds of 65-200 km/h.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system
- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment menu CAR → → **Driver assistance**.

Pause recommendation
The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about the detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system can evaluate the steering behaviour incorrectly and therefore falsely display a break recommendation.
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to as the system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard » page 41.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system, if one of the following events occurs.

- Change of tyre inflation pressure.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light (!) in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 169, in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 206.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.
- Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 206. When storing incorrect pressure values, the system could possibly not issue any warnings, even with a too low tyre pressure.

CAUTION

To ensure proper system function, the tyre pressure values must be stored every 10,000 km or 1x a year.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

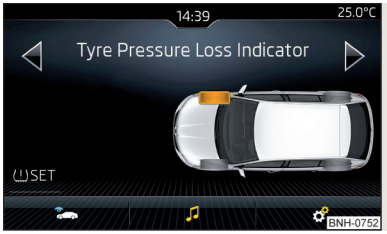


Fig. 215
Button for storing the pressure values/example of the screen display: the system indicates a tyre pressure change at the front right-hand side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the Infotainment, in menu CAR, tap in the function surface Tap → **Vehicle status**.
› Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ to select menu item *Tyre Press. Loss Indicator*.
› Tap the function surface (!) **SET** » Fig. 215.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the screen.

A message on the screen informs you about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When a warning light (!) in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 215.

Storing the tyre pressure values by means of the button

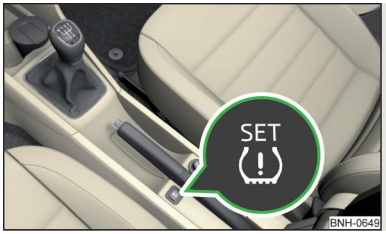


Fig. 216
Key for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! and ! on page 182 first.

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol key » Fig. 216 on the button and hold.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light goes out, indicating that the tyre pressure values have been stored.

› Release the symbol key .

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

The maximum trailer load is dependent on the engine and the vehicle equipment. The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, the declaration of conformity (the so-called COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) provide only about the test values of the device information.

! WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- When the ball rod is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, this could be damaged or incomplete and must not be used - risk of accident.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

Description

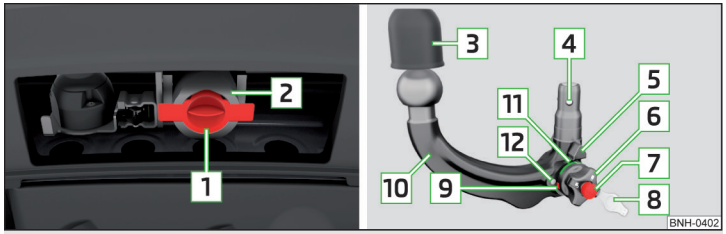


Fig. 217 **Carrier for the towing device / tow bar**

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

The ball rod is detachable and is located in the stowage compartment for the spare / emergency wheel.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 217

1 Cap
2 Mounting recess
3 Protective cap
4 Locking ball
5 Centering
6 Hand wheel
7 Key
8 Lock cap
9 Red marking on the hand wheel
10 Tow bar
11 Green marking on the hand wheel
12 White marking on tow bar

Adjusting the ready position

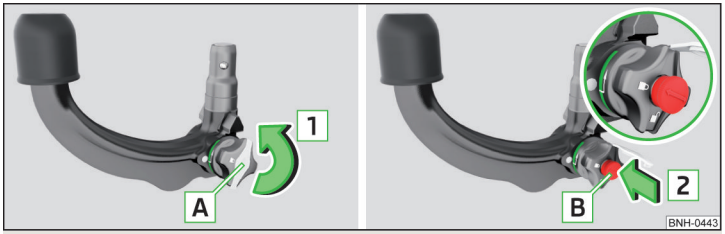


Fig. 218 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

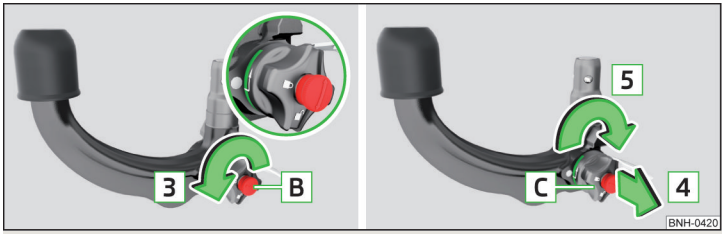


Fig. 219 **Setting the ready position**

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

The tow bar can only be fitted if it is in the ready position.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 218.
› Insert the key into the lock B in the direction of arrow 2, so that the arrow on the key symbol shows.
› Turn the key B to the stop in the direction of arrow 3, so that the arrow on the key symbol shows » Fig. 219.
› Pull the hand wheel C in the direction of the arrow 4 and turn in the direction of the arrow 5 to the stop. The hand wheel C remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

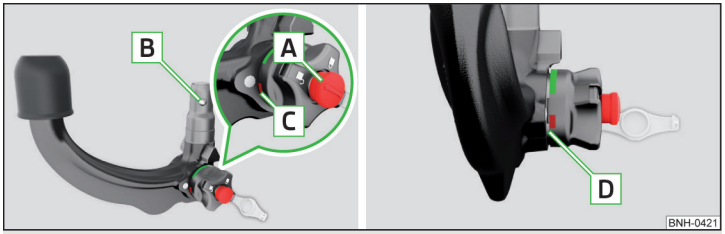


Fig. 220 **Ready position**

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 220

- ✓ The key A is in the unlocked position - the arrow on the key points to the symbol.
- ✓ The locking ball B can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
- ✓ The red marking C on the hand wheel points to the white marking on the ball bar.
- ✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 4 mm D between the hand wheel and the tow bar.

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the lock. The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

Assembling the tow bar – Step 1

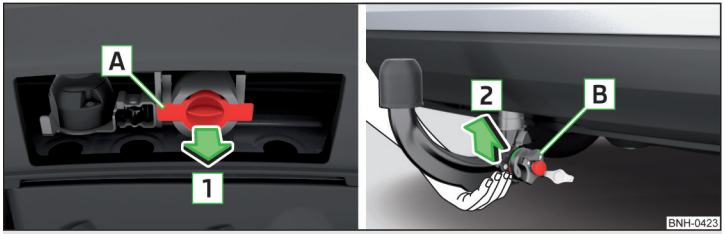


Fig. 221 **Remove cap for receiving shaft / use ball bar**

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

- › To **prepare for the installation**, remove the cap for the receiving shaft A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 221.
- › To **install**, hold the ball rod **from underneath** » Fig. 221.
- › Push the ball rod into the receiving shaft in the direction of arrow 2 until it stops. The ball rod must audibly snap into place » !.

The hand wheel B rotates back **automatically** and rests on the ball rod » !.

! WARNING

Do not hold the hand wheel with your hand when attaching the ball bar - there is a risk of finger injury.

Assembling the tow bar – Step 2

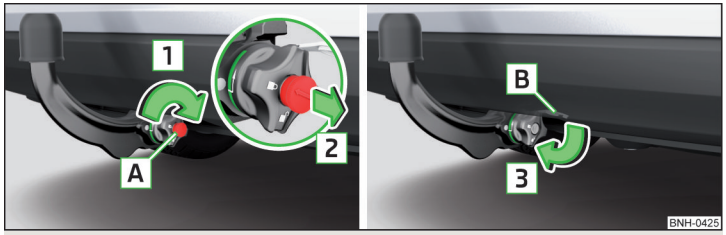


Fig. 222 **Secure the lock and remove key / place cap on lock**

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

- › Turn the key A in the direction of arrow 1, so that the arrow on the key symbol » Fig. 222 shows.
- › Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
- › Fit the cap B on the lock in the direction of the arrow 3.
- › Check that the ball rod is securely attached » page 186.

! WARNING

After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key. The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.

Check proper fitting

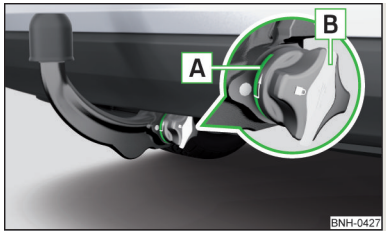


Fig. 223
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

Correctly secured tow bar » Fig. 223

- ✓ The tow bar must sit securely in the receiving shaft. There must be no play when “shaken” roughly.
- ✓ The green marking A on the hand wheel points to the white marking on the tow bar.
- ✓ The steering wheel is tight against the ball rod.
- ✓ The lock is locked and the key is removed.
- ✓ The cap B is on the lock.

Removing the tow bar – Step 1

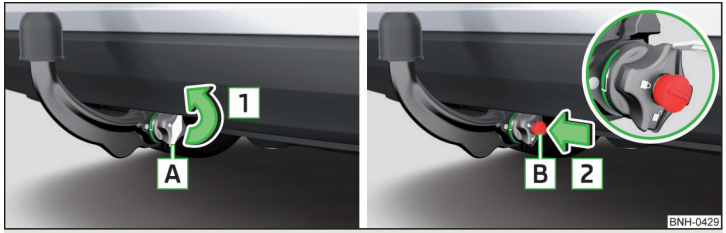


Fig. 224 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

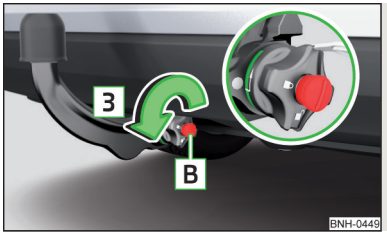


Fig. 225
Unlock lock

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

- › Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 224.
- › Insert the key into the lock B in the direction of arrow 2, so that the arrow on the key symbol shows.
- › Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3, so that the arrow on the key symbol » Fig. 225 shows.

Removing the tow bar – Step 2

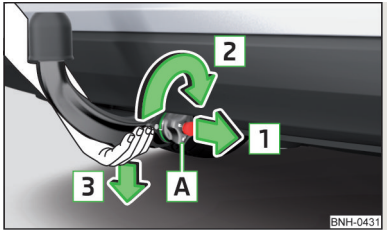


Fig. 226
Release tow bar

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

- › Grasp the ball bar from **below** » Fig. 226.
- › Pull the hand wheel A in the direction of the arrow 1.
- › Pull the steering wheel until it stops in the direction of arrow 2. Hold in this position.

› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 3. At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-fitted.

After removing the ball rod, insert the cap for the receiving shaft A against the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 221 *on page 185*.

If the hand wheel A is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 184, *Adjusting the ready position*.

The ball rod must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

WARNING

Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

Vertical load with mounted accessories

Read and observe ! on page 183 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) is **70 cm** .

The permissible total weight of the installed accessories, including load, corresponds to the maximum trailer load on trailers, but must not exceed **50 kg**.

This value applies when the centre of gravity of the load is a maximum of 30 cm from the ball head of the tow bar.

As the distance of the centre gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing device increases, the permissible total weight of the accessory, including the load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases approximately by half).

CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories – There is a risk of damage to the towing device.

Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using the towing device

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

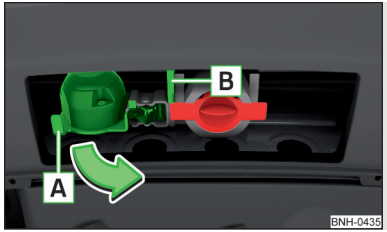


Fig. 227
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connecting / disconnecting

› Install the tow bar and the remove the protective cap 3 » Fig. 217 *on page 184*.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the ball head.
› Grasp the 13-pin socket at the handle A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 227.
› Plug the trailer (accessory) connector into the 13-pin socket. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding reduction piece from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 60.

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING
- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.

WARNING (Continued)
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - risk of accident!

CAUTION
- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected consumers to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for “full load”» page 206.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive with particular caution if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

WARNING
A sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - there is a risk of accident!

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	MG	1000	580
	DSG	1000	590
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1100	590

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	DSG	1200	610
	DSG (Green tec)	1200	610
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1000	580
	AG	1000	600
1.4 ltr./66 kW TDI CR	MG	1000	610
	DSG	1000	620
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1200	640

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive with the trailer any faster than 100 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1) or 80 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a truck of category N1).

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from “swaying” by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

! WARNING
Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

! CAUTION
With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 56.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.
- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when using accessories or carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist. Work carried out incorrectly (including work on the electronic components and their software) can result in malfunctions - there is a risk of accident and, potentially, increased wear on parts!
- We recommend that you use only ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- Do not use any products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, even though these may be products with a type approval or which have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA partner. He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, changing the battery or similar).

ŠKODA service partner

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these guidelines and instructions helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following.

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch the suitability of other products for your vehicle, despite the fact that some products may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with a Genuine Accessories spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle can only be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- A Genuine Accessories spoiler cannot be fitted to the front bumper either on its own (without a spoiler on the boot lid) or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the boot lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Improperly conducted work on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 190 first.

WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can impair the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

- No changes may be made to airbag system components, the front bumper and the bodywork.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must be replaced.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

Regular and thorough care helps to retain the value of your vehicle.

The instructions for use on the packaging must be observed when using care products. We recommend that you use ŠKODA Original Accessories care products.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - danger of damaging the surface to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and maintained at a ŠKODA service partner.

Car washing

Read and observe and on page 191 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is also essential to thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, with a soft sponge or a wash mitt and plenty of water, and, if necessary, with the appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

For wheels, door sills and lower areas of the vehicle use a different sponge.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic Car Washes

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle (e.g. closing the windows and the tilt/slide roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any special attached parts (e.g. spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc.) it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the wiper blades should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure Washers

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to instructions regarding the **pressure** and **spraying distance** from the vehicle surface.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury from sharp metal parts!

CAUTION

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be no more than 60 °C max. - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - risk of damage.
- For vehicles with roof antenna the antenna rod should be unscrewed before driving through a car wash - there is a risk of damage.

CAUTION

Washing the vehicle with high-pressure cleaners

- Do not wash the foils using pressure washers - there is a risk of damage.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- During cleaning, always keep a sufficiently large spraying distance in particular from the parking sensors, the reversing camera lens, the external decorative and protective plastic parts (e.g. roof racks, spoilers, protective strips) and other vehicle parts made of non-metallic materials, such as rubber hoses or insulation materials – otherwise there is a risk of damage.

Exterior car care

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax preserve (at least twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Paint has gone matt	Use polish, then wax (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose
Chrome and anodised parts	Soiling	clear water, cloth, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose, clean then polish with a soft dry cloth
Films	Soiling	soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Windows and door mirrors	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Head / taillights	Soiling	soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow/ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinders	Snow/ice	De-icing fluid specifically for that purpose
Wiper / wiper blades	Soiling	Windscreen cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then apply appropriate substance

[a] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of cavities
All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected by a layer of long-lasting protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal; this is not a fault.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

! CAUTION

- **Vehicle paint**
  - Repair damaged areas as soon as possible.
  - Matt-painted parts should not be treated with polishes or hard waxes.
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
  - Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint polish.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Films**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of film damage.
  - Do not use dirty cloths or sponges for cleaning.
  - Do not use a scraper or other means to remove ice and snow.

- Do not polish the films
- Do not use a high pressure cleaner on the films.

- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides deal with anything - the protective varnish coating could be damaged.
- **Windows and door mirrors**
  - Do not clean the insides of the windows/mirrors with sharp objects - risk of damage to the filaments or the antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth which has been used to polish the body - this could dirty the window and impair visibility.
- **Head / taillights**
  - Do not wipe head/taillights dry, do not use any sharp objects - risk of damage to the protective coating and cracks forming on the headlight glass covers.
- **Reversing camera**

  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinders**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy soiling of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - the result can be a vibration, which can cause premature wear of the steering.

Removing snow and ice from the windscreens

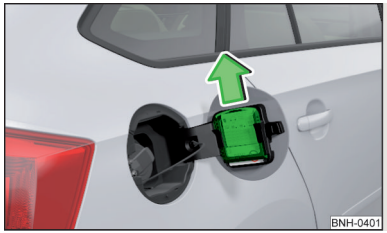


Fig. 228
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 228.

! CAUTION

- Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
- Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
- Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 191 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Material	Dust, surface soiling	Vacuum cleaner
	Soiling (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe off with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Cleaning fluid specifically for this task
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a leather protecting fluid / use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning
	Care (Alcantara® / material)	Remove stubborn hair using a “cleaning glove” Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, if necessary cleaners specifically for this purpose

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Covers on electrically heated seats	Soiling	Cleaners specifically for this purpose
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a)]

a) A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- **Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / material**
  - Avoid standing for lengthy periods in bright sunlight, and protect the materials by covering to prevent them from fading.
  - Remove fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish and similar) as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams - risk of damaging the leather!
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use leather cleaners, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this could lead to clearly visible discolouration on the upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage will not be recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dashboard – risk of damage to the dashboard.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers on electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean either with water or with other liquids - risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - After cleaning the belts, allow them to dry before retracting them.

i Note

During vehicle use, some minor changes may become visible on the leather and Alcantara® (due to e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

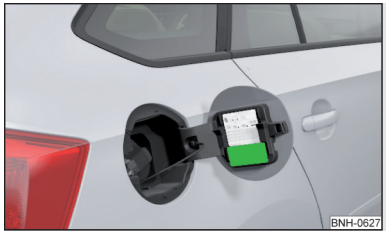


Fig. 229
Stickers showing the prescribed fuel

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 229.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **55 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

WARNING

The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - it can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in that country and/or whether the manufacturer will sanction operating the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

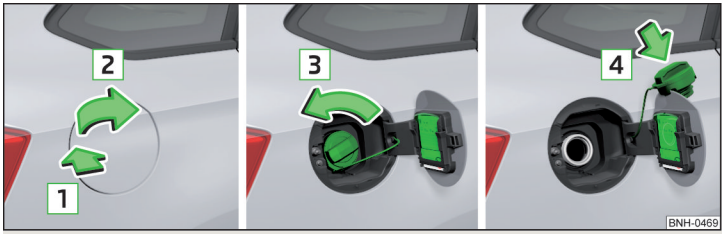


Fig. 230 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 230.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Do not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 229 *on page 196*.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** containing **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol must correspond to the European Standard **EN 228** (in Germany DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98).

Prescribed fuel 95/min. 92 and 93 RON
We recommend using petrol **95** RON.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, petrol **91** RON can be used (slight power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use at least **95** ROZ petrol.

In an **emergency**, **91**, **92** or **93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Prescribed petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** RON.

Optionally, petrol **95** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91**, **92** or **93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION
The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.
- When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- **Lower** than **91** octane petrol should not be used, even in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION
Petrol additives (additives)
- The unleaded petrol in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore do not recommend mixing fuel additives into the petrol - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives may not be used - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

i Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** ROZ does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93** ROZ is specified.
- On vehicles using the prescribed petrol of **min. 95** ROZ, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** ROZ can lead to an increase in power and reduction in fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 196 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 229 *on page 196*.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that complies with the European Standard **EN 590** (also standard DIN 51628 in Germany, standard ÖNORM C 1590 in Austria, GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590:2004 in Russia).

The diesel fuel may contain **maximum** 7% biodiesel (**B7** - In Germany in accordance with DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590).

Operating under different weather conditions
Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.

- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
- The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

CAUTION

Diesel fuel additives

- The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.

WARNING (Continued)

- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may still turn suddenly about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke in the vicinity of the engine and avoid the use of open flames or sparks.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine with the engine running, beware of **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - they can be fatal!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Only refill using fluids with the proper specification - risk of damage to the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the operating fluids replaced by a specialist garage.

Opening and closing the bonnet

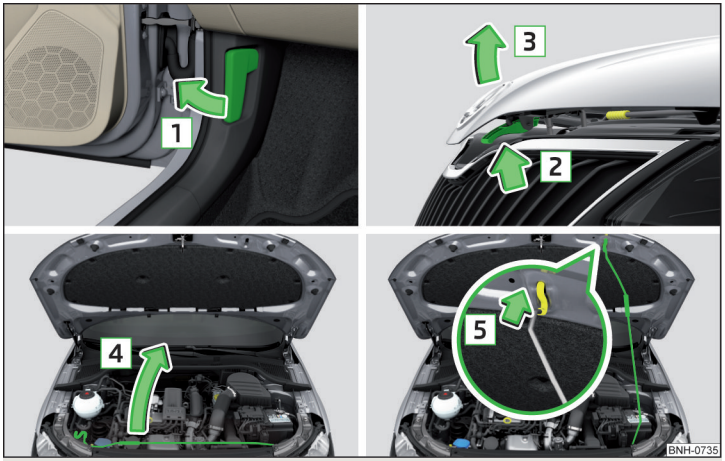


Fig. 231 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 198 first.

Open flap

› Ensure that the windscreen wipers are not raised away from the windscreen - risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 231.
› Press the release lever in the direction of arrow 2 and the bonnet will be unlocked.
› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Drop down the bonnet lid from a height of about 20 cm applying light pressure until it clicks safely into place.

! WARNING

- Never drive with the bonnet lid not properly closed - risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

When closing the bonnet “do not press down” - there is a risk of damaging the bonnet.

Engine compartment overview

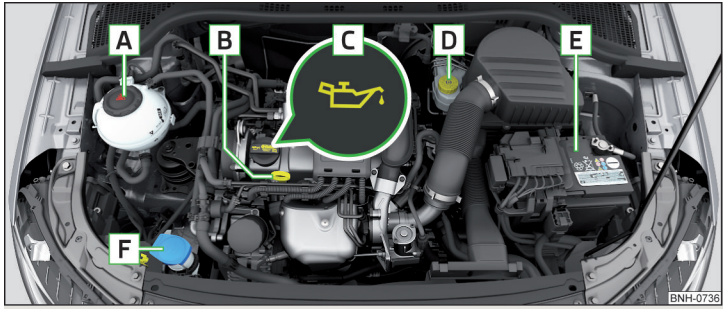


Fig. 232 **Arrangement (example) in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 198 first.

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	201
B	Engine oil dipstick	200
C	Engine oil filler opening	200
D	Brake fluid reservoir	202
E	Vehicle battery	203
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	200

Windscreen washer fluid

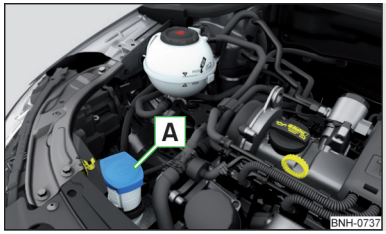


Fig. 233
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 198 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 233.

The contents of the container is 3.5 litres, for vehicles with a headlamp cleaning system 5.4 litres (for some countries, both versions have container volumes of 5.4 litres).

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid for the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use windscreen washer fluid from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight cleaning system, then only use windscreen washer fluid types that do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights - otherwise there is a risk of damage to headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can become contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Specification

To find out which type of engine oil you can use for your vehicle, contact a specialist garage.

If this oil is not available, other oils can also be refilled. To prevent engine damage, a **maximum of 0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change:

- Petrol engines: VW 504 00, VW 502 00, VW 508 00, ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
- Diesel engines: VW 507 00, ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

Check and refill

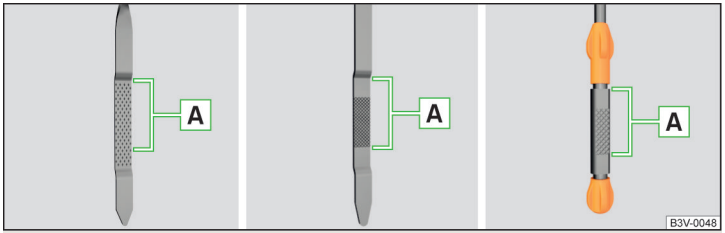


Fig. 234 **Dipstick variants**

The engine uses up some oil, depending on driving style and operating conditions (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

Have the **oil change** carried out by a specialist garage during the inspection.

Check and refill oil under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull the dipstick out and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick back to the stop and then pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in.

The oil level must lie in range A » Fig. 234. If the oil level is below range A, oil must be added.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening C » Fig. 232 *on page 199*.
› Add oil of the correct specification in portions of 0.5 litres » page 200.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 198.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never fall outside range A » Fig. 234 – otherwise there is a risk of damaging the engine and the exhaust system.
- If a top up with oil is not possible or the oil level is above range A, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not add any additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

Note

- Too low engine oil level is shown in the instrument cluster by the warning light illuminating and also indicated by the message » page 44. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the oil level on a regular basis using the dipstick.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coolant

Introduction

The coolant helps to keep the engine temperature down, and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevent furring).

The proportion of coolant additive in the coolant must be 40 to 60 %.

The correct mix of water and coolant additive should be checked and if necessary corrected by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 198.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurised - risk of scalding or injury from splashes of coolant!
- To protect against the coolant splashing, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If the coolant comes into contact with the eye or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water for several minutes, and where appropriate seek medical help.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator and install any parts (e.g auxiliary lights.) in front of the air intakes - risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

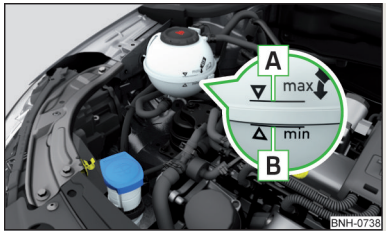


Fig. 235
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 201 first.

Check and refill coolant under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm the result of the check may be wrong).
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level – The coolant level must lie between the marks A and B » Fig. 235. If the coolant level is below the mark B, top up with coolant.

Refilling

The reservoir must always contain a small amount of coolant » !.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Always top up using coolant of the correct specification.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** for the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 235.

If the specified coolant is not available, then refilling only with distilled or demineralised water, and get a specialist garage to correct the water-coolant additive mix as soon as possible.

! CAUTION

▪ If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - risk of engine damage! STOP Do not drive the vehicle. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 235. The coolant could, when heated, be expelled from the cooling system - risk of damage to the engine parts.
▪ If it is not possible to add coolant, STOP do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
▪ If non-distilled (non-demineralised) water has been used to top up, the coolant should be replaced by a specialist garage - risk of engine damage.
▪ A loss of coolant indicates **leaks** in the cooling system - risk of engine damage. Top up with coolant and then seek assistance from a specialist garage.

i Note

A coolant level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 43. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid



Fig. 236
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the brake fluid level – The brake fluid level must lie between the markings “MIN” and “MAX”» Fig. 236.

Specification - the brake fluid must comply with the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

The **brake fluid change** is carried out during the inspection.

! WARNING

▪ If the date of the brake fluid change is exceeded, steam bubbles could form in the brake system during heavy braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!
▪ The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 198.
▪ If the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the “MIN” » Fig. 236 mark, this may be an indication of a leak in the brake system. STOP Stop driving – There is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

i Note

A brake fluid level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message» page 38. We still recommend inspecting the brake fluid level in the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Depending on the engine, the vehicle battery is either in the engine compartment or the luggage compartment.

Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery

The on-board power supply system tries to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging in the following ways when it is subject to heavy loading.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- Through the power limitation of certain consumers.
- By switching off some consumers (e.g. heated seats) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - it can cause injury, chemical burns or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.

WARNING (Continued)

- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent (e.g. children).
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

Working on the car battery may cause explosion, fire, injury or chemical burn! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not smoke, use open flames or light or transmitting devices.
- **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Do not connect the battery terminals, bridging the two poles will cause a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Checking the condition

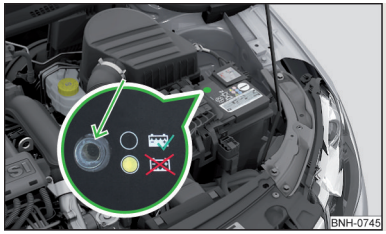


Fig. 237
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level
For car batteries with acid level indicator, acidity can be checked on the basis of a colour display. In vehicle batteries with the label **"AGM"** there is no acid level examination.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully tap on the indicator before carrying out the check » Fig. 237.

Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge
If frequent short journeys are made, the vehicle battery does not recharge sufficiently.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ of the battery or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

Only charge the battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging
- For vehicles **with**the START-STOPsystem or auxiliary heater, connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger on the battery's ⊕ pole, the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point of the engine » page 216.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem or auxiliary heating, connect the charger terminals to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to ⊕, ⊖ to ⊖).
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

! WARNING
- When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused through sparking while unclamping or loosening the cable plug.
- So-called"quick-charging" of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. Therefore, have"Quick loading" carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting/reconnecting and replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

- To **disconnect**, switch off the ignition and disconnect the negative terminal first ⊖, then disconnect the positive terminal ⊕.
- When **reconnecting** the battery, reconnect the positive terminal ⊕ first, then connect the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Commissioning
Windows	» page 60
Time settings	» page 46

CAUTION

- Disconnect the battery only with the ignition and consumers turned off - risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before disconnecting the battery, close all the electric windows - otherwise malfunctions of the window can occur.
- Under no circumstances mix up the charging cables – risk of fire.

Note

After disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of the vehicle is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

New tyres, during the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Tyres with the deeper profiles should always be fitted to the front wheels.

Rims and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheels and tyres should always be **stored** in a cool, dry and dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored vertically.

Tyre life

Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). E.g. **DOT ... 10 17...** means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2017.

Tyre damage

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre's profile immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and help should be sought from a specialist garage.

Fitting new tyres

Only fit approved radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

Directional tyres

Some tyres may be directional. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.

- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

WARNING

Never use damaged tyres or tyres that are older than 6 years old – risk of accident.

CAUTION

- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances (e.g. oil, grease and fuel) which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use rims with ground or polished surfaces in winter conditions - there is a risk of rim damage (e.g through salt spreading).

Tyre pressure

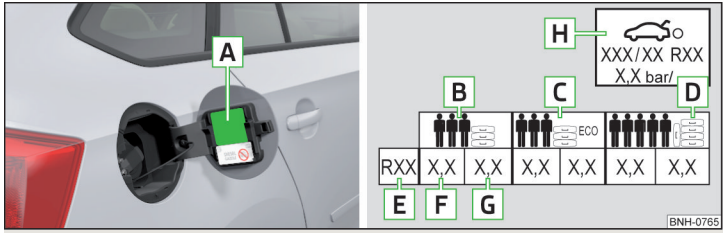


Fig. 238 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre pressure is indicated on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 238 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document).

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

H Required tire pressure value for the emergency wheel

Check tyre pressures

Check the tyre pressure (including that of the emergency or spare wheel) at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 182.

WARNING

- Do not drive with incorrect tyre pressure - risk of accident.
- In the event of very rapid pressure loss (e.g. in the event of tyre damage) an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking - risk of accident.

Note

The declaration of conformity (the so-called. COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (only valid for some countries and some models).

Tyre wear and wheel change

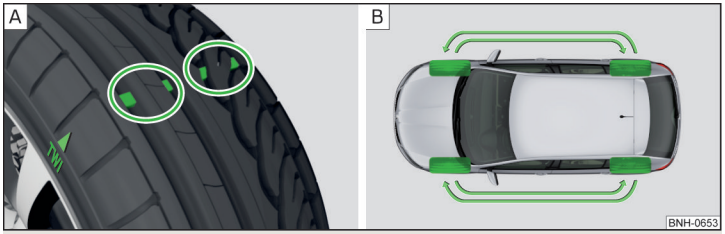


Fig. 239 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

Tyre wear increases in the following circumstances.
- Incorrect tyre pressures.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / braking).
- Incorrect wheel balancing (you should have the wheels balanced after changing/repair tyres or if the steering “is drifting”).
- Wheel alignment errors.

There are **wear indicator markers** in the tyre treads, indicating whether the minimum permissible tread depth has been reached » Fig. 239 - A. A tyre should be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters “TWI” or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

To ensure uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10 000 km, in line with the schedule » Fig. 239 - B.

! WARNING

- Change the tyres at the latest when they are worn down to the wear indicators - risk of accident.
- Faulty wheel alignment affects handling - risk of accident.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle “pulling ” to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If there are no external signs of tyre damage, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

A **full spare wheel** is identical to the wheels mounted on the vehicle.

A **temporary spare wheel** is provided with a warning label on the rim. Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

Instructions for using a temporary spare wheel
- Do not cover the warning sign.
- Be particularly observant when driving.

Inflate the spare wheel to the maximum prescribed inflation pressure » page 206.

! WARNING

A temporary spare wheel can only be used for a short time in the event of a breakdown and with a correspondingly careful driving method.

Emergency spare wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

The emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Instructions for using an emergency wheel
- Do not cover the warning sign.
- Be particularly observant when driving.

! WARNING

- Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Avoid full throttle acceleration, sharp braking and fast cornering when driving with the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 185/60 R 15 84 H

185	Tyre width in mm
60	Height/width ratio in %

R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
84	Load index
H	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

Load index	83	84	85	86	87	88
Load (In kg)	487	500	515	530	545	560

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in a given category

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270

WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or “winter”) tyres

All-year or “winter”tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

To get the best possible driving characteristics, all-year or “winter”tyres, with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels, should be fitted.

If “winter” tyres are mounted, summer tyres should be fitted again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol

All-year or “winter”tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) of a lower speed category than listed in the vehicle’s technical documentation can be used provided that the maximum permissible speed for these tyres is not exceeded even if the maximum possible speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with Infotainment, the speed limit for all-season or “winter” tyres can be set with the button CAR in menu CAR → ⚙ → **Tyres**. For other vehicles, there is the possibility to set the speed limit for winter tyres at a specialist garage.

If the vehicle has all-season or “winter”tires of a lower speed category then the specified maximum speed of the vehicle (referring to tyres that have not been delivered by the factory, a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category provided for the mounted tyres must be fixed in the interior of the vehicle in a constantly visible place in the driver’s field of vision. The warning label (sticker) can be replaced by setting the maximum value of the speed category specified for the mounted tyres in Infotainment (only applies to certain countries). This specification defines the maximum vehicle speed with mounted all-season or “winter”tyres that may not be exceeded.

Snow chains

The snow chains improve handling in wintry road conditions.

Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
5J x 14	35 mm	175/70 R14

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 9 mm.

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15	38 mm	185/60 R15

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

WARNING

Do not use chains on snow and ice-free routes - the handling would be impaired and there is a risk of damage to the tyres.

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

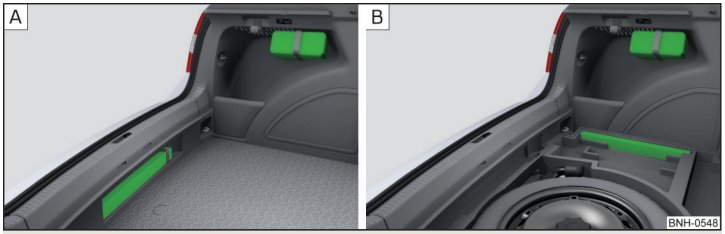


Fig. 240 **Placing of the first-aid kit and the warning triangle**

The following information is for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original accessories valid.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the luggage compartment » Fig. 240.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be inserted into the recess under the loading edge and secured with the fastener tape» Fig. 240 A.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 2
On vehicles with the vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, the warning triangle can be stowed in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment » Fig. 240 - B.

! WARNING

Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Location of reflective vest



Fig. 241
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stored in a holder under the driver's seat » Fig. 241.

fire extinguisher



Fig. 242
Release the fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two straps in the direction of arrow » Fig. 242 and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

! WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

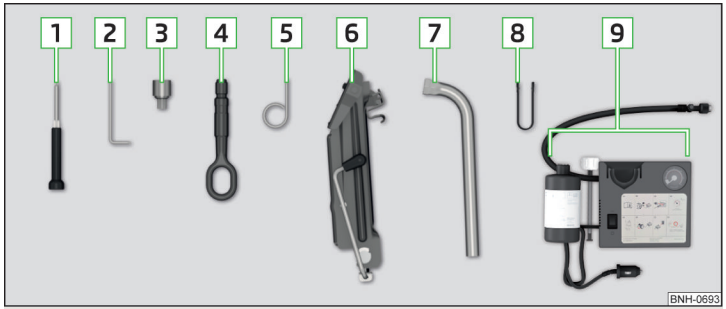


Fig. 243 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box with the tool kit is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel and may be secured with tape, depending on specification.

Depending on the equipment, not all the components listed in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

1 Screwdriver
2 Spanner for removing and installing the tail light
3 Top section for the anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eyelet
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Jack with sign
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
9 Breakdown kit

WARNING

▪ The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with it – there is a risk of injury.
▪ Always stow the tool safely in the box and make sure that it is attached with the belt to the spare wheel - otherwise it could cause injury to the occupants if breaking suddenly or colliding with another vehicle.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box – Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1st gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road while the wheel is being changed (they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

› Take out the emergency or spare wheel » page 211.
› Remove the full wheel trim » page 211 or caps » page 212.
› Loosen the wheel bolts » page 212 ».
› Jack up the vehicle » page 213 until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.

› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (“pulling crossways”) » page 212.
› Replace the wheel trim » page 211 and caps » page 212.

When fitting a wheel with directional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 205.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If screws are corroded and difficult to move, these must be replaced.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn), provided the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come loose and fall off – risk of injury.
- Under no circumstances must the bolts be greased or oiled - cause an accident.

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› Check tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary and, with vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 182.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Replace the damaged tyre. Repairing the tyre is not recommended.

WARNING

Tightening torque which is too high can damage the threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Where tightening torque is too low, the wheels may become loose while driving - risk of accident. Therefore, drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing/stowing the emergency or spare wheel



Fig. 244
Take out the wheel

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the luggage compartment and is fixed in place with a fastening screw » Fig. 244.

Take out the wheel

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the fastening screw in the direction of arrow » Fig. 244 and the remove the wheel.

Stow the wheel

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.

On vehicles with the vehicle battery in the boot, lay down the wheel with the outer face upward.

› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw the fastening screw opposite to the direction of arrow until it stops » Fig. 244.
› Place the box with the tool kit back inside the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Remove trim

› Hang the clamps for removing the full wheel trims at the edge of one of the ventilation openings in the full wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is indicated by means of a symbol on the back of the wheel trim supplied ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories. If using the anti-theft wheel bolt it should be fitted at this point » !.

WARNING

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories. A sufficient air supply may not be able to be guaranteed with other wheel trims to cool the braking system – Otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

CAUTION

▪ If the wheel trim is positioned outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.
▪ Use only manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – otherwise there is a risk of damaging the trim.

Note

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 245
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap** insert the extraction pliers as far as they will go on the cap and pulling them out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 245.
› To **install**, insert the cap onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

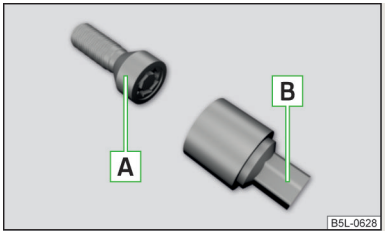


Fig. 246
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. This can only be **loosened/tightened** with attachment B » Fig. 246.

› Insert the upper section B on the anti-theft wheel bolt A until it stops.
› Insert the key as far as it will go onto attachment B and loosen / tighten the wheel bolt.
› Remove the attachment.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change!

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Note

We recommend that you retain the label with the code number. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA Original Parts based on this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 247
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Insert the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 246 *on page 212*.
› To **loosen the screws**, grasp the key end and turn the screw about **one** turn rotation in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 247.
› To **tighten the screws** grasp the key end and turn the screw against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 247, until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - danger of injury.

Raising the vehicle

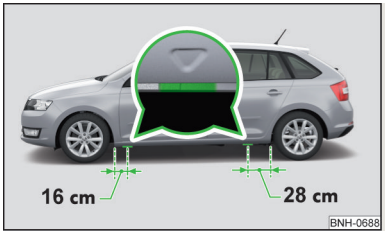


Fig. 248
Jacking points for the jack

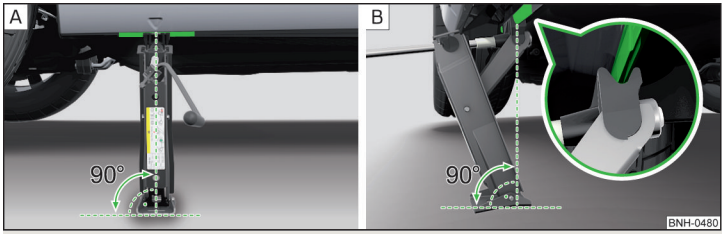


Fig. 249 **Attach lifting jack**

Before the vehicle is raised, please take note of the safety instructions » !.

In order to raise the vehicle, the jack from the tool kit is to be used. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.

The jacking points are located on the lower sill » Fig. 248.

› Position the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack will fit in the jacking point when raised » Fig. 249 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its pawl covers the jacking point » Fig. 249- B.
› Raise the vehicle until the wheel is a little off the floor.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Ensure the vehicle cannot unexpectedly roll away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Place a wide and stable base material under the jack if on a loose surfaces (e.g. gravel).
  - Place an anti-slip base material (e.g. a rubber mat) under the jack if on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts (e.g. arms or legs) under the vehicle while the vehicle is raised.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam – otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

The following information applies for the breakdown kit supplied ex-factory.

The breakdown kit can be used to seal punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit as soon as possible, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails).

Do not use the breakdown kit in the following cases.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the instruction manual for the tyre filling bottle with sealant.
- Tyre punctures greater than 4 mm.
- Damage to the tyre wall.
- The use-by date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If there is skin contact with the sealant wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the instructions provided in the puncture repair kit manufacturer's instructions for use.

Description of the breakdown kit

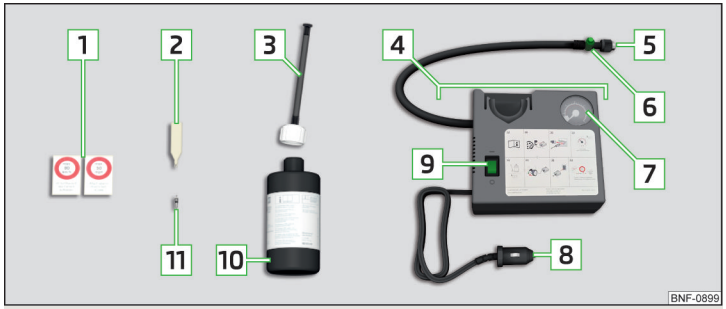


Fig. 250 **Description of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1 Sticker with speed designation “max. 80 km/h”/“max. 50 mph”
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Button for the tyre pressure reduction
7 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
8 12 volt cable connector
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealant
11 Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before undertaking a wheel repair on a road.
- Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1st gear**.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- Have **all the occupants get out**. While the repair is being carried out, the passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
- Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

Sealing
- Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.

› Attach the valve remover 2 » Fig. 250 *on page 214* onto the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean base (rag, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the bottle cap is pierced.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and insert the bottle onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflater bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert with the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 250 *on page 214* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 8 into the 12 volt socket » page 79.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar has been reached, turn off the air compressor. Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the instructions of the repair kit manufacturer » !.
› If an air pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar has not been reached, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to “distribute” in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 onto the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

At a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, the journey can be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h or 50 mph.

! WARNING

- If the tyre does not inflate to at least 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor at the latest after the running time according to the instructions of the repair kit manufacturer has elapsed – otherwise there is the risk of compressor damage! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information on driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› The tyre cannot be properly sealed with the breakdown kit. STOP **Do not continue to drive!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 206.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 198.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 203.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion and injury!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

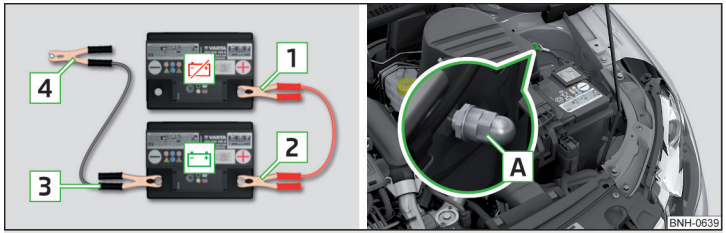


Fig. 251 **Jump-starting: - discharged battery, - power-supplying battery/ground point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

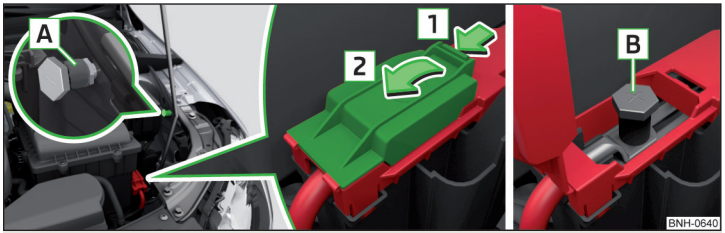


Fig. 252 **Earth point and positive terminal on vehicles with the vehicle battery in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 216 first.

If, because of a discharged battery, it is not possible to start the engine, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. To do this, jump-start cables are required which have a sufficiently large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the power-supplying battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the power-supplying battery.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the power-supplying battery.
- For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system, attach clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A » Fig. 251.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to a solid metal part firmly attached to the engine block or directly to the engine block.

Installation location of the positive terminal and the earth point in vehicles with the vehicle battery in the luggage compartment

The positive terminal B is located under a cover in the engine compartment » Fig. 252.

- Unlock the lock buttons of the cover in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2.
- Clamp the positive terminal of the jumper cable to the position B » Fig. 252. ▸

› Clamp the negative terminal of the jumper cable to the earth point of the engine A or on a metal part firmly connected to the engine block or directly on the engine block.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Initiate the starting process in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
› Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

WARNING

▪ Never clamp the jump cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - risk of explosion.
▪ The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit!
▪ The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit!
▪ Position the jump cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

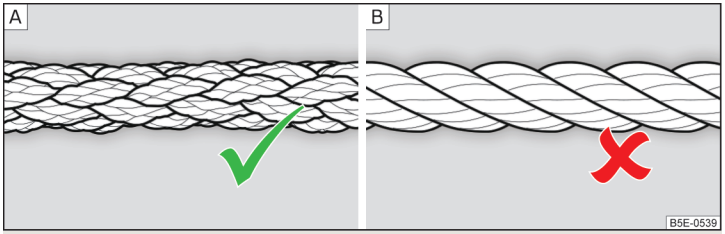


Fig. 253 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

To tow with a tow rope, use only a braided synthetic fibre rope » Fig. 253 - A » .

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes at the front** » page 218, **towing eyes at the rear** » page 218 or to the **towing device of the trailer device** » page 183.

Conditions for towing.

✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**
✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. The brake booster and power steering only operate if the engine is running, otherwise much greater force has to be applied to the brake pedal and more power has to be expended for steering.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Keep the tow rope taut at all times during the towing procedure.

WARNING

▪ Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 253- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle – risk of accident.
▪ The tow rope should not be twisted - there is a risk of accidents.

CAUTION

▪ Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 216, *Jump-starting*.
▪ For off-road towing manoeuvres, there is a risk to both vehicles that the fasteners may become overloaded and damaged.

Note

We recommend that you use a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye



Fig. 254 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Cap removal/fitting

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 254.
› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **fit**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 254 until it clicks into place » !.
› **Tighten** the towing eye using a wheel wrench or similar object. To do this, insert the wheel wrench through the eye.
› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

WARNING

The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Towing eye rear



Fig. 255
Rear towing eye

The rear towing eye is located below the bumper on the right.

Remove the protective cap before using the towing eye. » Fig. 255. Replace the protective cap after using the towing eye.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the pre-installed detachable tow-bar may be used » page 183, *Hitch*.

Remote control – Changing the battery

Introduction

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must correspond to the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

Note

- We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Key with fold-out key bit

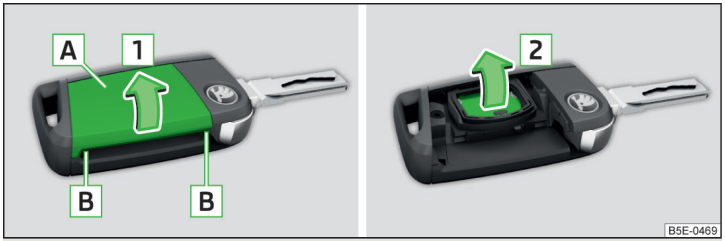


Fig. 256 **Opening the cover/removing the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 218 first.

› Pop out the key bit.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 256 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 56.

Emergency unlocking/locking of doors

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

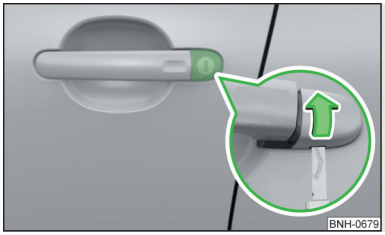


Fig. 257
Handle on the driver's door: open lock cover

The driver's door can be emergency unlocked / emergency locked using the key via the lock cylinder.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 257.
› Release the door handle.
› Insert the vehicle key bit into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders

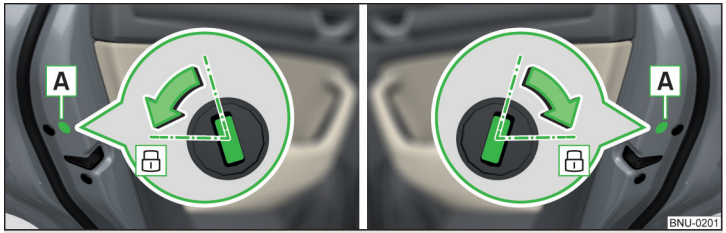


Fig. 258 **Left door/right door**

› Open the corresponding door.
› In vehicles with panel A, remove this panel » Fig. 258.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

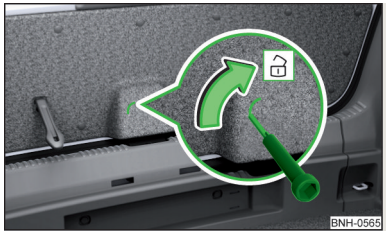


Fig. 259
Unlocking the door

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside the vehicle.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess in the trim » Fig. 259 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever emergency unlocking



Fig. 260 **Remove / release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› With one hand on the edge of the cover, push in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 260.
› At the same time lift the cover on the selector lever gaiter with the other hand in direction of arrow 2.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 3, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 261
Setting the service position for the wiper arms



Fig. 262 **Changing the windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 220 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blades, close the bonnet and put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Push the lever in the direction of arrow » Fig. 261 within 10 seconds and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 262.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 261.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 263 **Changing the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 220 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 263.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

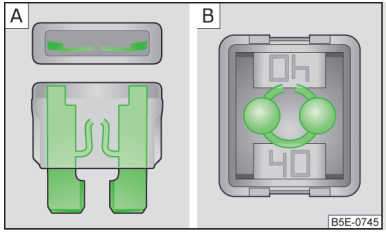


Fig. 264
Blown fuse

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip » Fig. 264 A/B.

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 198.

CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse again blows after a short time, then seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- “Do not repair” the fuses and do not replace them with stronger fuses - danger of fire and damage to another electrical system.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- There can be several power-consuming devices for one fuse. Multiple fuses may exist for a single power-consuming device.

Fuses in the dashboard

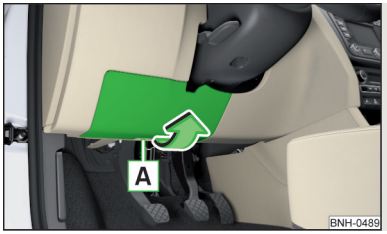


Fig. 265
Remove the fuse box cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 265 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.
› Insert the top edge of the cover into the dash panel first.
› Push the lower edge of the cover in the region A.

Fuse assignment in the dashboard



Fig. 266
Fuses: A - LHD / B - RHD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Light - left
2	Central locking, windscreen and rear window washer system (only with KESSY or heated windscreen)
3	Ignition
4	Light - right
5	Power windows - driver
6	Interior lighting
7	Horn
8	Towing hitch
9	Operating lever beneath the steering wheel, engine control unit (only without KESSY), automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), automatic gearbox (only without KESSY), ESC (only without KESSY), towing equipment (only without KESSY), power steering (only without KESSY)
10	Power windows - rear left
11	Headlight cleaning system
12	Infotainment screen
13	Voltage stabiliser for taxi vehicles
14	Operating lever under the steering wheel, light switch, ignition key removal lock (automatic gearbox), headlight flasher, rain sensor, reversing camera
15	Air conditioning, automatic transmission, diagnostic connector, heated windscreen
16	Instrument cluster, emergency call
17	Anti-theft alarm, horn
18	Heating of the rear seats
19	Not assigned
20	Not assigned
21	Not assigned
22	Windscreen and rear window washer system (without KESSY or without heated windscreen)
23	Heated front seats
24	Blower fan for air conditioning system, heating, air conditioning, heating
25	Not assigned
26	Heated front seats
27	Rear window wiper
28	Not assigned
29	airbag
30	Electric windows, reverse light switches, air conditioning system, Park Assist, exterior mirror settings, power feed for centre button strip, power feed for side button strip, interior mirror, switch for hazard warning lights
31	Fuel pump, radiator fan, cruise control, windscreen and rear window washer, light switch
32	Diagnostic connector, headlight levelling, control lever under the steering wheel, voltage stabiliser for taxi vehicles
33	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
34	Heated windscreen washer jets

No.	Power consumer
35	Not assigned
36	USB charge function
37	Radar
38	Not assigned
39	Electrical auxiliary heating system
40	Not assigned
41	Rear window heater
42	Power windows - front passenger
43	Towing hitch
44	Cigarette lighter, 12-volt socket in the interior, 12-volt socket in the luggage compartment
45	Power windows - rear right
46	Front and rear window washer, operating lever under the steering wheel
47	Towing hitch
48	Towing hitch
49	Fuel pump
50	Infotainment
51	Heating of the external mirror
52	KESSY
53	Steering lock (KESSY)
54	ABS or ESC
55	Not assigned
56	Not assigned
57	Not assigned
58	Heating of the rear seats
59	Not assigned

Fuses in the engine compartment

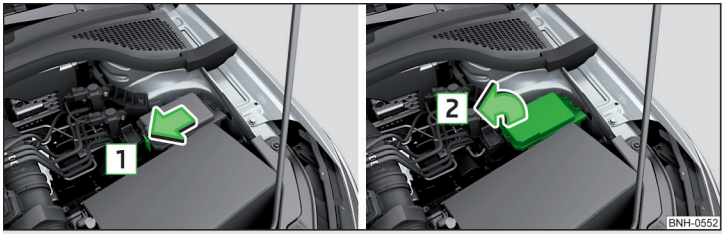


Fig. 267 **Cover for the fuse box - variant 1**

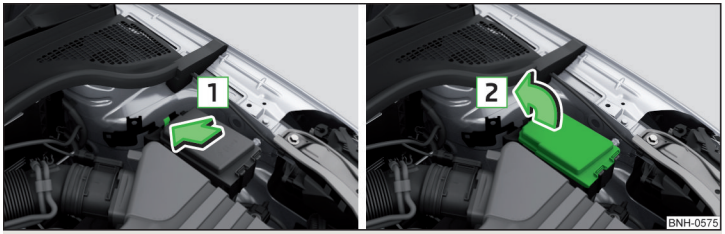


Fig. 268 **Cover for the fuse box - variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

Replacing fuses

- Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
- Press together the lock buttons of the cover simultaneously in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 267 or » Fig. 268 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the plastic clip from the holder on the cover of the fuse box in the dashboard.
- Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
- Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.

CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

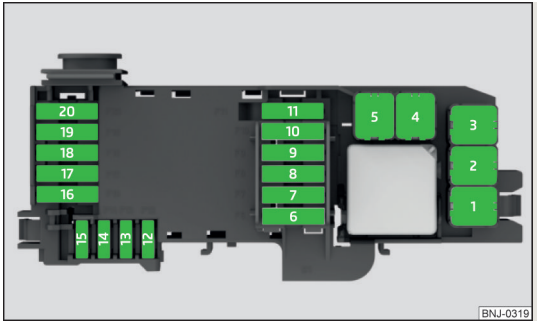


Fig. 269
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 222 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	Radiator fan
2	Glow plug system
3	ABS or ESC
4	Additional electrical heating, heated windscreen
5	Additional electrical heating, heated windscreen
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Engine control system
8	Windscreen wipers
9	Battery data module
10	ABS or ESC
11	Vacuum pump for the brake system
12	Injectors, valve for fuel metering, control valve for fuel pressure
13	Brake pedal switch
14	Fuel pump, radiator fan, cooling pump, pump intercooling
15	Engine control system, voltage stabiliser for taxi vehicles
16	Starter
17	Engine control system
18	Additional electric heater, valve for intake manifold, wastegate, oil temperature, valve for activated charcoal filter, valve for oil pressure control
19	Lambda probe
20	Glow plug system, crankcase ventilation heater

Bulbs

Introduction

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs, Xenon gas-discharge lamps or LED lights must be replaced by a specialist garage.

We recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 198.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.

WARNING (Continued)

- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Do not carry out any work on the Xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- The cap of the filament bulb must always be seated correctly in the headlight, otherwise this may allow water and debris to enter the headlight - risk of damage to the headlights.

Note

We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the halogen headlights

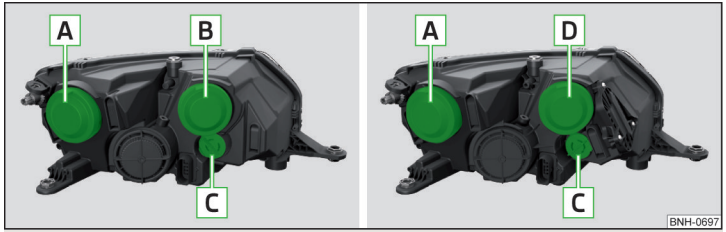


Fig. 270 **Left headlight: Halogen headlight / halogen headlight with LED daytime running lights**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 270

A Low beam
B Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light
C Flashing
D Main beam

Replace bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light (halogen headlight)

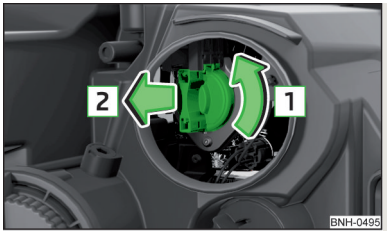


Fig. 271 **Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights**

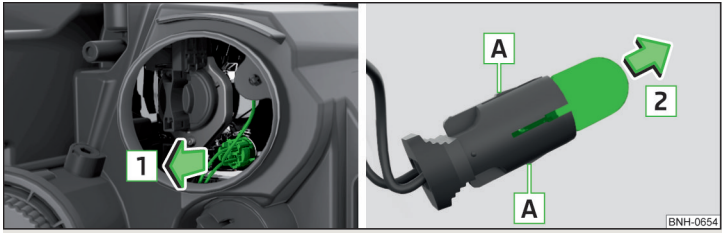


Fig. 272 **Change the light bulb for the parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.
› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 271.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2 .
› Replace the bulb in the holder.
› Insert the holder with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the holder with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit the protective cap B » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.

Remove / insert the bulb for parking light

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.
› Remove the holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 272.
› Hold the housing containing the bulb in area A.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the housing in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert a new bulb in the housing until it stops.
› Insert the housing with bulb into the headlight again.
› Fit the protective cap B » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.

Changing the bulb for the low beam



Fig. 273 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

› Remove the protective cap A » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 273.
› Remove the connector with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points upwards.
› Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
› Fit the protective cap A » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.

Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light



Fig. 274
Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

› Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 274.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2 .
› Replace the bulb in the holder.
› Insert the holder with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the holder with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.

Replace the bulb for the main beam (halogen headlight with LED daytime running lights)

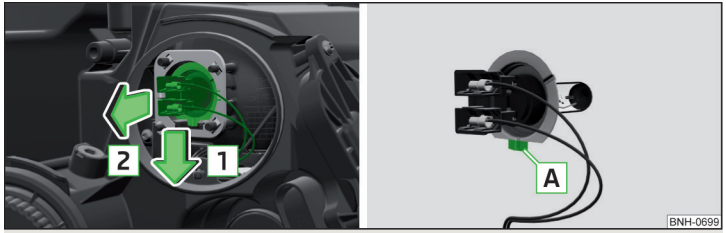


Fig. 275 **Changing the bulb for the main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

› Remove the protective cap D » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.

› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 275.
› Remove the connector with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points downwards.
› Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
› Fit the protective cap D » Fig. 270 *on page 226*.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

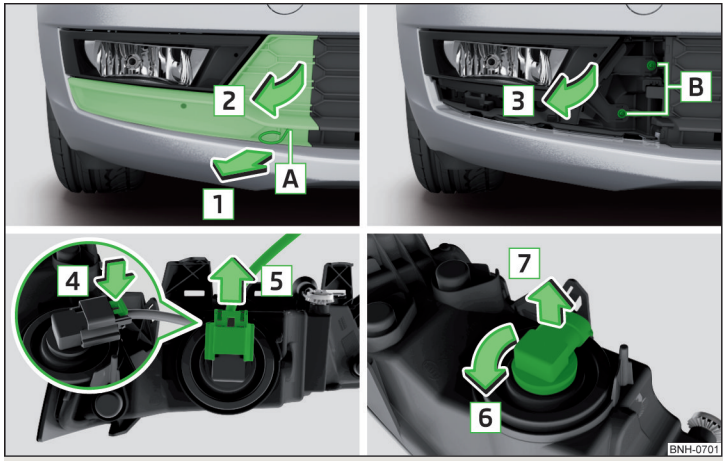


Fig. 276 **Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 276.
› By pulling the hook in direction of arrow 1, remove the protective grille in the direction of arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the holder with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7 .
› Insert a new holder with the bulb in the headlamp and turn it in the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 276 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Removing/installing taillights

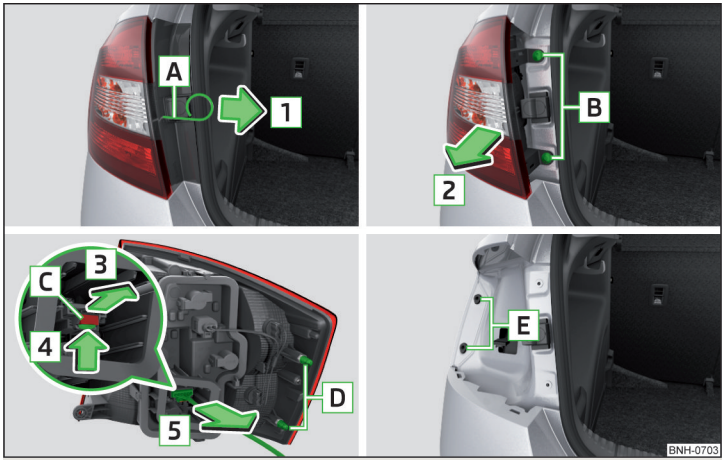


Fig. 277 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 277.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Grasp the lamp and carefully remove in the direction of arrow 2.
› Press the latch C on the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Press the safety lug in the direction of arrow 4 and pull out the holder in the direction of arrow 5.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the light and lock it securely.
› Tighten the lock in the opposite direction to the arrow 3.
› Insert the lamp with pins D » Fig. 277 into the recesses E in the body.
› Carefully push the cover in » !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover. The cover must engage securely.
› Close the boot lid.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing the bulbs in the taillight assembly

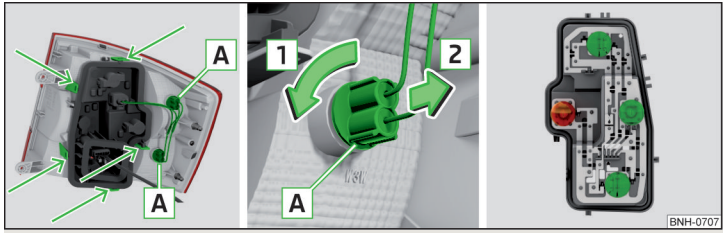


Fig. 278 **Outer part of the lamp / removing the bulb / lamp holder**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the holder with the bulb A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 278.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Change the bulb.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Inner parts of the lamp

› Unlock the bulb holder at the areas marked with arrows » Fig. 278 and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.

› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly. The holder must engage securely.

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The listed values are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Abbreviations used

Abbreviation	Meaning
AG	Automatic gearbox
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo charging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection

Vehicle data

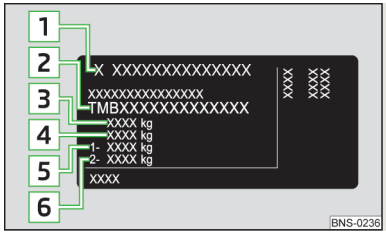


Fig. 279
Type plate

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 279 is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

1 Vehicle manufacturers
2 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
3 Maximum permissible gross weight
4 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
5 Maximum permissible front axle load
6 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

In Infotainment, the VIN number can also be displayed in the menu CAR → ⚙ → **Service**.

Engine number
The engine number is embossed in the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible towed weight
The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without any equipment added that would also increase the weight (e.g. emergency or spare wheel etc.). This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	MG	1165
	DSG	1199
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1185
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	DSG	1222
	DSG (Green tec)	1231
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1170
	AG	1210
1.4 ltr./66 kW TDI CR	MG	1239
	DSG	1260
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1290

i Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 183.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

i Note
- The emission and fuel consumption figures given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by statutory or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

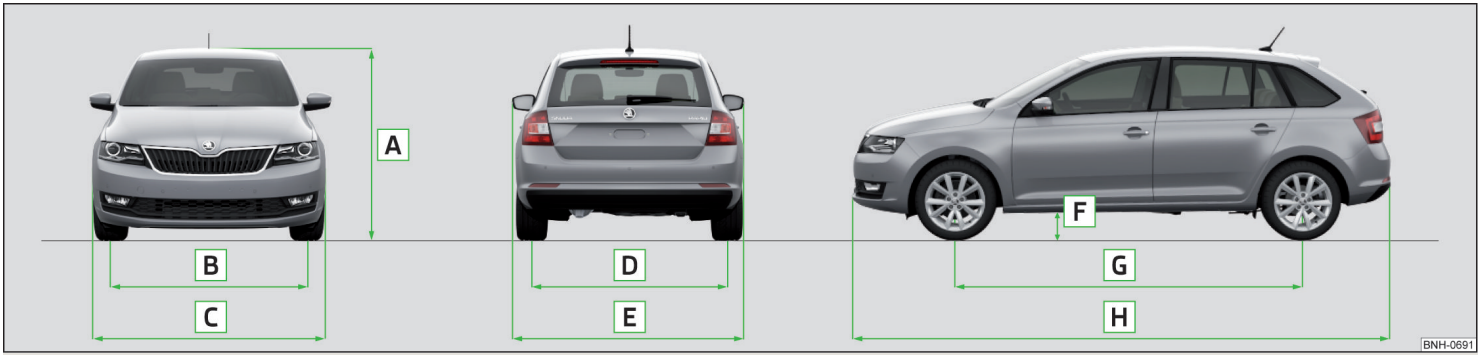


Fig. 280 **Vehicle dimensions**

The vehicle dimensions given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.
The dimensions listed below are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 280	Specification		Value
A	Height		1459
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1457
		Vehicles with the 1.0 l/70 kW TSI and 1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR engine	1463
C	Width		1706
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1494
		Vehicles with the 1.0 l/70 kW TSI and 1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR engine	1500
E	Width including exterior mirror		1940
F	Clearance		134
G	Wheel base		2602
H	Length		4304

Departure angle



Fig. 281
Overhang angle

Angle » Fig. 281

A Overhang angle, front
B Overhang angle, rear

The overhang angle values indicate the maximum incline of a slope, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without the bumper or underbody making contact with the slope. The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Overhang angle (°)

Overhang angle, front	Overhang angle, rear
13.8	16.5

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The exhaust gas standard is specified in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document). The declaration of conformity (the so-called. COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (only valid for some countries and some models).

1.0 ltr./70 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	70/5000-5500	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	160/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	184	186
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.0	11.3

1.0 ltr./81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/5000-5500
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/2000-3500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Gearbox	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	198
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8

1.4 ltr./92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	92/5000-6000
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/1400-4000
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395
Gearbox	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	205
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.9

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/5800	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	155/3800-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Gearbox	**MG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h)	193	189
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.2	11.5

1.4 l/66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	66/3000-3250	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	230/1750-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/1422	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	183	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.6	11.7

1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	85/3500-4000
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3000
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1596
Gearbox	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	198
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9

Index

A

A2DP/AVRCP 129
Abort route guidance 155
ABS 40, 170
Accessories 190
Activation of online services 14
Adjusting
Steering wheel 19
Advance warning / Emergency braking 45
Advice on tyre/wheel usage 205
AG 231
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 91
airbag
warning light 41
Airbag 24
Adjustments and impairments to the airbag system 191
Deactivation 26
Deployment 24
Airbag system 24
Air conditioning 88
Air distribution control 90
Climatronic 89
Manual air conditioning 89
Air distribution control 90
Air outlet vents 91
Alarm 56
Trailer 189
All-year tyres 208
Alphanumeric keyboard 96
Alternative routes 106
AM 113, 114
Amundsen
external module 94
Infotainment description 92
Android Auto 137
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 170
Anti-theft alarm system 56
Trailer 189
Anti-theft wheel bolts 212
APN 104
Apple CarPlay 138
applications
Disclaimer 92
Armrest
Front 70
Rear 71
Ashtray 79
Assembling the
tow bar, Step 1 185
tow bar, Step 2 185
Assist systems 169
Audio source 119
Auto Check Control
Vehicle status 47
Automatic consumer shutdown 203
Automatic drive
Selector lever 165
Automatic driving light control 62
Automatic gearbox
Disengage selector lever 166
Kickdown 166
Malfunction 42
Selector lever lock 165
Start and drive 166
Warning light 42
Automatic switch-off of Infotainment 96
Automatic transmission 165
Selector lever emergency unlocking 220
Tiptronic 166
AUX 74, 121
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 168

B

Ball bar
Standby position 185
Ball head
Check fitting 186
Ready position 184
Battery
Changing in key 218, 219
Belts 21
Belt tensioners 23
Blues
Infotainment description 93
Bluetooth
A2DP/AVRCP 103
Name 103
Paired external devices 103
Profiles 129
Set 106, 109
setting 103
Switching on/off 103, 109
Update 101, 104
Updates 109
Visibility 103, 109
Bluetooth Player 121
Bluetooth® update 128
Bonnet 199
Boot
Cargo element 85
Class N1 vehicles 85
Hooks 83
See boot lid 58
Boot cover
Parking position 84

Boot lid 57
Automatic locking 58
Open/Close 58
Brake Assist (HBA) 170
Brake booster 162
Brake fluid 202
Check 202
specification 202
Brake pads
New 162
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
Warning light 42
Brakes
Brake fluid 202
Braking and stabilisation systems 169
Handbrake 163
Information on braking 162
Run in 167
Warning lights 38
Brake system 169
Braking
Brake booster 162
Breakdown call 130
Breakdown kit 213
Broadcasting 113, 114
Buttons in driver's door
Electric power windows 59

C

Call list
Call list 132
CAR 158
Car battery
Automatic consumer shutdown 203
Disconnecting and reconnecting 204
Replacing 204
CAR button 158
Car care
Exterior 193
Interior 194
Car computer
see multifunction display 48
Care and maintenance 190
Care Connect 15
Cargo element 85
Car park 145
Carrier 87
CarStick 134
Car washing 192
Exterior 193
Interior 194
Washing 192
cellphone
Disclaimer 92
Central locking 52
Problems 56
Central locking button 54
Changing
Battery 218, 219
Windscreen wiper blades 221
Changing a wheel 210
Changing 210
Changing gear
Selector lever 165
Changing wheels
Wheels 210
Charging a vehicle battery 204
Check
Brake fluid 202
Engine oil 200
Fit ball head properly 186
Oil level 200
Checking
Battery condition 204
Coolant 201
Children and safety 28
Child safety lock 56
Child seat 28
Classification 30
Installation location 30, 31
ISOFIX 31
on the front passenger seat 29, 30
TOP TETHER 32
Cigarette lighter 80
Clearing calls 106
Climatronic 88
air distribution control 90
Automatic mode 90
Operating elements 89
Clock 111
Change display 97
Clothes hook 78
Cockpit 35
Lighting 64
Comfort flashing 61
COMING HOME 63
compartments 73
Compatible sources
Images 125
Component protection 191
Computer
see multifunction display 48
Conditions for pairing 129
Conference call 132
Configuration wizard 98
Connect external device to the Infotainment hotspot 135
Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device 135
Coolant 201
Checking 201
Refilling 201

Temperature display 37
Warning light 43
CORNER
See Fog lights with CORNER function 63
Correct routing of seat belt 21
Correct seating position 18, 20
Cruise Control System 176
Cup holders 75
Custom POI categories 148, 149

D

DAB 113, 114
Additional information 113
Radio text and images presentation 113
Set 105, 110
DAB slideshow 113
Data connection
Amundsen 134
CarStick 134
Internet 134
Data roaming 104
Date 102, 109
DAY LIGHT
see Daytime running lights 61
Daytime running lights 61
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 66
Deactivation
Airbag 26
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See boot lid 58
Delete destination 152
Demo mode 108, 153
Departure angle 234
Destination
Custom destination 148
Enter destination using the address 144
enter in map 145
Favourite 146, 152
Flagged destination 146
Home address 147
Image with GPS 150
Last destinations 146
Map point 145
Memory 152
Online destinations 146
search 143
Stored destination 146
Telephone contact 146
Types of destination search/destination entry 143
vCard 146
Destination details 152
Destination management
Destination details 152
Favourite 152
Storage 152
Destination memory 146
Device menu
Sound 102
Diesel 197
Diesel fuel 197
Diesel particle filter (DPF) 44
Digital clock 46
Digital service schedule 51
Dipped beam 60
Dipstick 200
Directive 2014/53/EU 8
Disclaimer
applications 92
external devices 92
Mobile phones 92
Display
Coolant temperature 37
Fuel level 37
Gear changes 47
In the instrument cluster 46
MAXI DOT 50
Display of a low temperature 45
Display POIs in the map 145
Distance warning 179
Diverting calls 106
Door
Child safety lock 56
Emergency locking 219
Emergency locking of the driver's door 219
Opening/ Closing 55
Door alarm 46
Drive Green 167
Driver information system 46
Driving
Driving through water 168
Emissions 232
Fuel consumption 232
Maximum speed 235
DSG 231
Dynamic route 158

E

Economical driving 167
Edit route 155
EDS 170
Electric power windows 58
Buttons in driver's door 59
Operational faults 60
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 170
Electronic immobiliser 159
Elevation 141
emergency
Jump-starting 216
Emergency
Hazard warning light system 64
Jump-starting 216

Selector lever unlocking 220
Starting/stopping the engine at the push of a button 160, 161
Towing the using the tow hitch 218
Towing the vehicle 217
Tyre repair 213
Unlocking/locking the door 219
Emergency call 15, 130
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 209
First aid kit 209
Jack 210
Reflective vest 209
Vehicle tool kit 210
Warning triangle 209
Emergency spare
Removing / stowing 211
Emergency spare wheel 207
Emission control system 40
Emissions 232
Engine
Information messages 43
Run in 167
Engine compartment 198
Brake fluid 202
Coolant 201
Engine oil 200
Overview 199
Vehicle battery 203
Windscreen washer fluid 200
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 170
Engine number 231
Engine oil 200
Check 200
Oil changing 200
Refilling 200
Specification 200
Warning light 43, 44
Enter destination 144, 145
EPC 40
Equalizer 102
ESC
Operation 169
External device data transfer 98, 103, 109
External devices
Disclaimer 92
External module 94
SD card 120
Extras
manual search 114
Scan 114

F

Factory settings 103, **109, 158**
Familiarizing yourself with the vehicle 2
Fastening elements 82
Fatigue detection
Fatigue detection system 181
Fatigue detection system 181
Favourite 146, 152
Favourite contacts 131
file formats
media 122
Requirements and Restrictions 122
File formats
Images 125
File Formats 123
Films 193
Find
Car park 145
Petrol station 145
Restaurant 145
Finish route guidance 155
Fire extinguisher 209
First aid kit 209
Flagged destination 146
Flashing 61
Floor covering in the luggage compartment 83
Floor mats 164
See Floor mats 164
FM 113, 114
Set 105, 110
Fog lights 63
Warning light 42
Fog lights/rear fog light 63
Fog lights with CORNER function 63
Force limiter
Window 59
Front assist
Warning light 45
Front Assist 178
Deactivation/activation 180
Distance warning 179
Malfunctions 181
Operation 179
Radar sensor 169
Settings in Infotainment 179
Warning and automatic braking 180
Warning light 45
Front seats 70
Fuel 196
Diesel 197
Fuel gauge 37
refer to Fuel 196
Refuelling 196
Unleaded petrol 196
Warning light 41
Fuel consumption 232
Fuel options 107
Fuel reserve 41
Functional surfaces 94
Fuses 222
in the dashboard 222, 223
in the engine compartment 224, 225

G

Gearbox
Information messages 42
Gear change
Gear recommendation 47
Information on the selected gear 47
Gear changing
lever 164
Genuine parts 190
Glasses storage box 77
GPS 141
Graphical driving recommendations 154

H

handbrake
warning light 38
Handbrake 163
Hazard warning light system 64
HBA 170
Headlight
Headlight assist 62
Headlight assist 45, 62
Headrests 71
Adjusting the height 71
Heating 88, 89
Air distribution control 90
Mirrors 69
Seats 72
Windscreen and rear window 66
Hill Start Assist 171
Hitch 183
Home address 107, 147
Hooks 83
Horn 35
Hotspot
Connect 135
Set 135

I

Ignition lock 160
Images
Compatible sources 125
Display 105
File formats 125
Main menu 124
Operation 124
Requirements and restrictions 125
Safe removal of the data source 103
Selecting the image source 124
Set 105
Supported file formats 125
Image viewer 124
Immobiliser 159
Import
Destinations (online) 149
Destinations (vCard) 148
POI categories 148
POI categories (online) 141, 149
Routes (online) 156
Import contacts 111
Importing contacts 106
In an emergency
Changing a wheel 210
Inertia reels 23
Information about the towing process 217
Information call 130
Information system 46
Gear recommendation 47
MAXI DOT display 50
Multifunction display 48
Service interval display 51
Infotainment 92
Infotainment description
Amundsen 92
Swing 93
Infotainment Description
Blues 93
Infotainment language 102, 109
Infotainment menus
Grid display 97
Horizontal display 97
Infotainment Online 16
Infotainment operation 94
Infotainment screen 94
Infotainment operation using an application in the external device 98
Infotainment overview 92
Infotainment restart 96
Infotainment screen 102, 108
Areas 94
Important information 94
Keyboard 96
Maintenance 94
Operation 94
Input screen
Language characters 109
Input screen with keyboard 96
Instrument cluster 36
See instrument cluster 36
Vehicle status 47
Warning lights 37
Interior light 65
Interior lights 64, 65
Interior monitor 57
Internet 134
Amundsen 134
CarStick 134
iPad holder 80
ISOFIX 31

J

Jack 210

Jacking points
Raise vehicle 213
Journey data 49
Jump-starting 216

K

KESSY
deactivating 54
Starting/Stopping the engine 160
Switching the ignition on/off 160
Unlocking/locking 53
Key
Changing battery 218, 219
Lock 53
Starting/Stopping the engine 160
Switching the ignition on/off 160
Unlock 53
Keyboard 96

L

Lamp failure 44
Lamps
Warning light 44
Lane recommendation 154
Language characters 103
Last destinations 146
Latitude 141
LEAVING HOME 63
Lever
Cruise control 177
Front Assist 180
Operation of the information system 47
Speed limiter 178
Turn signal/main beam 61
Windscreen wipers 67, 68
Liability for defects 6
Light 60
Cockpit 64
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 63
Daytime running lights 61
Driving abroad 64
Flash 61
Fog lights/rear fog light 63
Fog lights with CORNER function 63
Hazard warning light system 64
Headlight assist 62
Headlight cleaning system 68
Parking light 64
Replacing bulbs 225
Turn signal/main beam 61
Light Assist
see Headlight assist 62
Light bulbs
Replacing 225
Lighting
Interior lighting 64
Luggage compartment 81
Lights
Automatic driving light control 62
Dipped beam 60
Headlight range control 60
Parking lights 60
Switching on and off 60
Warning lights 37
List
of available stations 115
of telephone contacts 130
With folder/track list 119
List of available hotspots 135
List of paired external devices 129
List of traffic reports 156
Load 232
Localisation services 15
Lock
Individual settings 55
KESSY 53
Key 53
Locking
Central locking button 54
in case of emergency 219
Remote control 53
Lock steering lock 159
Longitude 141
Luggage compartment 81
Cover 83
Fastening elements 82
Fixing nets 82
Floor covering on both sides 83
Lighting 81
unlocking manually 220
Unlocking the boot lid 220
Variable loading floor 86
Luggage compartment cover 83
Luggage Storage
Storage compartments 84
Storage net bag 85

M

Main beam 61
Warning light 42
Main menu
Android Auto 138
Apple CarPlay 138
Images 124
Media 117
Media Command 126
MirrorLink® 139
Navigation 142
Radio 113
SmartLink+ 137
SMS 133
WLAN 135

Make up mirror 66
Manage memory 107
Management of online services 14
Management of online services ŠKODA Connect 109
Management of ŠKODA Connect Online Services 104
Manage stored routes 156
Managing paired devices 129
Manoeuvre
Graphical driving recommendations 154
Navigation announcements 154
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 90
Controls 89
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 164
Map
Automatic scale 150
Display 142
Display of traffic signs 106
Display options 150
Display POIs 145
Fast map view 150
Lane guidance 106
Main menu 142
Manual scale 150
Map centring 151
Operation 142
Orientation 151
POI display 106
Road signs 152
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 50
MAXI DOT display
assist systems menu item 51
Audio menu item 50
Main menu 50
Navigation menu item 50
Operation 47, 48
MAXI DOT Display
Apple CarPlay 51
Telephone menu 51
Maximum speed 235
MCB 171
Mechanical window lifter 58
opening/closing 58
media
Compatible sources 122
file formats 122
Requirements and Restrictions 122
Media
Audio source 119
AUX 74, 121
Bluetooth Audio 121
Browser 119
File Formats 123
List 119
Main menu 117
Multimedia database 119
Operation 117
Playback control 118
Safe removal of the data source 103
Safe removal of the external data source 109
SD card 120
Select audio source 117
Set 110, 112
Setting 105
Supported Media 123
USB 74, 120
Voice control 99
WLAN 121
Media Command
Control 126
Main menu 126
Supported formats 126
Memory 49
MG 231
Mirror 66, 68
MirrorLink® 138
Modes of the automatic transmission 165
Modifications and technical alterations 190
More keypad languages 103, 109
Most frequent routes 154
MPI 231
MSR 170
Multicollision brake (MCB) 171
Multifunction display
Functions 48
Information Overview 48
Memory 49
Multifunction pocket 83
Multifunction steering wheel 48
Multimedia
see Media 117
Multimedia database 119
Multimedia holder 76
Mute 97
MyŠKODA App application 10

N

N1 85
Navigation
Abort route guidance 155
Advanced settings 108
Alternative routes 106
Contacts 146
Demo mode 108, 153
Destination address 144
Destination details 152
Destination display 150
Destination in map 145
Destination memory 146
Destination search 143
Dynamic route 106

Edit route 155
Favourites 146
Finish route guidance 155
Foreword 141
Fuel options 107
GPS 141
Graphical driving recommendations 154
Home address 147
Image with GPS 150
Import destinations 148
Imported destinations 107
Last destinations 146
Main menu 142
Manage memory 107
Map 106
Map centring 151
Map display options 150
Map orientation 151
Map scale 150
Most frequent routes 154
Navigation announcements 107, 154
Navigation data 141
Preferred type of route 106
Route 152
Route calculation 153
Route details 155
Route display 150
Route guidance 152
Route information 155
Route list 156
Route options 106
Set 106
Speed limits 107
Split screen 143
Start route guidance 153
Status line 108
Stopover 152
Traffic obstruction 158
Trailer towing 153
Types of destination search/destination entry 143
Update navigation data 141
Update the navigation data 107
Updating the navigation data online 141
Version information 107
Voice control 99
Working with the navigation 141
Navigation announcements 107, 154
Navigation data 141
Nets 82
Network
Data connection 104
Data roaming 104
Set 106
setting 104
Values of the downloaded data 104
New route 156
Notes 11

O

oil
see Engine oil 200
Oil changing
Engine oil 200
On-board computer
see multifunction display 48
Online
Destination details 152
Destination import 146
Destination search 143
Details of the traffic report 157
Find car park 145
Find petrol station 145
Import destination 149
Importing POI categories 141, 149
List of traffic reports 156
Route import 156
Update navigation data 141
Updating the navigation data 141
Online destinations 146
Online services
Deleting the user 14
Electronic Owner's Manual 13
Instruction video 13
Localisation services 15
Private mode 14
Services Management 14
Switching user 14
ŠKODA Connect Portal website 12
Online Services 12
Activation in Infotainment 14
Care Connect 15
Infotainment Online 16
proactive service 15
Remote access to the vehicle 16
Service package 12
ŠKODA Connect website 12
Online services ŠKODA Connect
enable service 109
Operating the Infotainment menus 96
Operating weight 232
Operation
Images 124
Media 117
Radio 113
Telephone 127, 128
Voice control 100
Original accessories 190
Overview
Cockpit 35
Engine compartment 199
Fuses 222
Warning lights 37

P

Pairing process 129

Parking 163
Parking aid 171
Parking aid 171
Automatic system activation when moving forward 174
Operation 172
Settings in Infotainment 172
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 173
Parking lights 60
Parking sensors
Display Infotainment screen 173
Parking the vehicle
see Parking 163
ParkPilot 171
Parts replacement 190
Passive safety
Before setting off 18
Driving safety 18
Passive Safety 18
Pedals 164
Floor mats 164
Petrol 196
Petrol station 145
Petrol station logo 106
PIN
Set 106
Playback
Media 118
Pocket in the luggage compartment 83
Pockets 78
POI 148, **149**
POIs 145
Power steering 39
Practical features
Glasses storage box 77
Pockets 78
Storage compartment for umbrella 77
Waste container 75
Preheating unit 40
Preset list 115
Principles of Infotainment operation 94
Private mode 14
Proactive service 15

R

Radio
Broadcasting 114
List of available stations 115
Main menu 113
manual search 114
Operating 113
Preset buttons 115
Preset list 115
Radio station logo 116
Save station 115
Scan 114
Search for stations 114
Select station 115
Set 105, 110, 112
Traffic program (TP) 116
Voice control 99
Radio equipment
Information on Directive 2014/53/EU 8
Radio station
Save 115
Radio station logos 116
Update 104
Radio stations
Select stations and search 114
Raise vehicle 213
Rear fog light 63
Warning light 40
Rear headrests
Removing/inserting 72
Rear seats 70
Rear view mirror 68
Rear window - heating 66
Refilling
Coolant 201
Engine oil 200
Windscreen washer fluid 200
Reflective vest 209
Refuelling 196
Fuel 196
Register online services
settings 104, 109
Registration of online services
Electronic Owner's Manual 13
Instruction video 13
Regulation
Headlight beam 60
Remote access to the vehicle 16
Remote control
Changing battery 218, 219
Synchronisation process 56
Unlocking/locking the vehicle 53
Removing the
tow bar, Step 1 186
tow bar, Step 2 186
Repairs and technical alterations 190
Replacing
Bulbs 225
Fuses 222
Windscreen wiper blades 220
Reset counter for distance driven (trip) 46
Restaurant 145
Rev counter 36
Rims 205
Road signs
Infotainment display 152
Roof
Load 87

Roof rack 87
Route 152
New route 156
Online route import 156
Route list 156
Store route 155
Route calculation 153
Trailer towing 153
Route details 155
Route information 155
Route list 156
Route options 106
Run-in
Engine 167
Running in
Brake pads 162
Tyres 205

S

SafeLock 54
Safe removal of the data source 103
Safe removal of the external data source 109
Safety 18
Airbag 24
Child safety 28
Child safety seats 28
Correct seating position 18
Headrests 71
ISOFIX 31
TOP TETHER 32
SAFE, SAFELOCK
See SafeLock 54
Save station 115
Saving electrical energy 167
Saving fuel 167
Scan 114
Scraper 194
Screen
see Infotainment screen 94
Screen display 94
SD card 120
Safe removal 109
Search
Destination 143
Online destinations 143
Types of destination search/destination entry 143
Search for stations 114
Seat belt
height adjustment 21
Warning light 43
Seat belts 21
Belt tensioners 23
fastening and unfastening 22
Inertia reels 23
Warning light 39
Seats
Adjusting the front seats 70
front 70
Front armrest 70
Headrests 71
Heating 72
Rear 70
Rear armrest 71
Rear seat backrests 70
Setting 70
Select audio source 117
Selector lever 165
Selector lever control 165
Selector lever lock 42
Select station 114, 115
Service 190
Service interval display 51
Warning light 45
Service interval 51
Service interval display 51
Service intervals 51
Service schedule 51
Set
lower position of the variable loading floor 86
upper position of the variable loading floor 86
Setting
Headrests 71
Mirror 68, 69
Seat belt height 21
Seats 70
Time 46
settings
ŠKODA Connect 109
Settings
Advanced settings 108
APN 104
Bluetooth 103, 106, 109
Codecs 105
Configuration wizard 98
DAB 105, 110
Data connection 104
Equalizer 102
External device data transfer 103, 109
FM 105, 110
Fuel options 107
Images 105
Information regarding the navigation data version 107
Infotainment 102, 108, 111
Infotainment language 102, 109
Infotainment screen 102, 108
Manage favourites 131
Manage memory 107
Map 106
Media 105, 110, 112
More keypad languages 103, 109
Navigation 106
Navigation announcements 107

Network 104
PIN 106
Radio 105, 110, 112
Reset to factory settings 103, 109, 158
Route options 106
SmartLink+ 106, 111
Software update 101
Software updates 109
Sound 102, 108, 111
Sound system 102
Speed limits 107
Subwoofer 102
Surround 102
System information 101, 104, 109
ŠKODA Connect 104
Telephone 106, 111
Text messages 106
Time and date 102, 109
Units 103, 109
Update software 104
User profile 131
Vehicle 158
Voice control 103
Volume 97
WLAN 104
Setup 111
Shifting
Tiptronic 166
SmartLink+ 136
Android Auto 137
Apple CarPlay 138
Introduction to the subject 136
Main menu 137
MirrorLink® 138
Set 106, 111
ŠKODA OneApp application 139
SMS
Main menu 133
New message 133
Received message 134
Snow chains 208
Sockets
12-volt socket in the interior 79
12-volt socket in the luggage compartment 79
Software update 101
Software Update 104
Software updates 109
SOS button 15
Sound 102, 108, 111
Sound system 102
Spare wheel 207
Removing / stowing 211
Speed limiter 42, **177**
Speed limits 107, 154
Speed regulating system
Warning light 42
Speed symbol 207
Split screen 143
Manoeuvre 154
Spoiler 191
SSID 104
Stabilisation system 169
Stability Control (ESC) 39, 169
Standby 97
START-STOP 161
Deactivate/activate the system manually 162
functionality 161
Jump-starting 216
Warning light 45
START-STOP system 161
Start engine 160
Jump-starting 216
Starter button
Lock/unlock the steering lock 159
Problems with starting the engine 161
Starting/Stopping the engine 160
Switching the ignition on/off 160
Starting engine
Jump-starting 216
Starting the engine
Immobiliser 159
Start route guidance 153
Status bar 94, 142
Status line
Navigation 108
Telephone 127, 128
Steering lock (KESSY system) 39
Steering wheel
Adjusting 19
Buttons 48
Proper posture 19
Stop engine 160
Stopover 152
Stopping
see Parking 163
Storage 73
Storage compartments
see Practical features 73
Storage net bag 85
Stored destinations
Destination memory 146
Last destinations 146
Store destination 152
Subwoofer 102
Sun visors 66
Supported audio sources 123
Supported files 123
Supported sources
media 122
Surround 102
Swing
Infotainment description 93
Switch
Car battery 204
Switching off Infotainment 96

Switching off the ignition 160
Switching on Infotainment 96
Switching on the ignition 160
Switching the lights on and off 60
Switch off
Alarm 57
System information 101, 104, 109

T

Tablet holder 80
TCS 39, 40, 170
TDI CR 231
Technical data 231
Telephone
Additional telephone 129
Bluetooth profiles 129
Bluetooth® update 128
Breakdown call 130
Call list 132
Call settings 106
Clearing calls 106
Compatibility 128
Conditions for pairing 129
Conference call 132
Connecting to the infotainment 128
Connection types 129
Dialling the telephone number 130
Diverting calls 106
Emergency call 130
Enter telephone number 130
Favourite contacts 131
Functions 130
Import contacts 111
Importing contacts 106
Information service 130
Introductory information 127
Main menu 127, 128
Main telephone 129
Manage favourites 111
Managing favourites 106
Operation 127, 128
pairing 128
Pairing process 129
Premium 106
Set 106, 111
Setting text messages 106
Telephone 127, 128
Telephone book 130
Telephone call 132
Text messages (SMS) 133
User profile 106, 111
Voice control 99
Voicemail 130
Telephone book 130
Telephone call 132
Telephone compatibility 128
Telephone connection types 129
Telephone functions 130
Telephone number 130
Text messages 133
Ticket holder 74
Time 46, **102, 109**
see Clock 111
Time and date display in the Infotainment screen 97
Tiptronic 166
TMC
Details of the traffic report 157
Dynamic route 158
List of traffic reports 156
Tools 210
TOP TETHER 32
Touch screen 94
Towing 218
Towing a trailer 189
Towing away 217
Towing device 187
Accessories 187
Description 184
Vertical load 183
Towing eye 218
Towing protection 57
Towing the vehicle 217
Traction control (TCS) 39, 170
Traffic
Details of the traffic report 157
Dynamic route 158
List of traffic reports 156
Traffic Information (TMC) 157
Traffic obstruction 158
Traffic program (TP) 116
Traffic reports (TMC) 156
Trailer
Connect and disconnect 187
Loading 188
Towing a trailer 189
Trailer stabilisation system (TSA) 171
Trailer towing 183
Navigation 153
Transmitter
See main menu 113
Transport
Luggage compartment 81
Roof rack 87
Towing device and trailer 183
Transporting children 28
Triangle 209
TSA 171
TSI 231
Turn signal 61
Turn signal system
Warning light 42
Tutorial videos 10
Type plate 231

Tyre
Wear indicator 207
Tyre load capacity 207
Tyre pressure 206
Warning light 41
Tyre pressure monitor
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 182
Tyre pressure monitoring 182
Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display 182
Warning light 41
Tyre repair 213
Tyres 205
damage 205
Explanation of the label 207
new 205
Tyre pressure 206
Tyre size 207

U

Units 103, 109
Unlock
Individual settings 55
KESSY 53
Key 53
Unlocking
Central locking button 54
In case of emergency 219
Remote control 53
Unlocking and locking 52
Unlock steering lock 159
Update navigation data 141
Update the navigation data 107
Updating the navigation data 141
USB 74, 120
Safe removal 109
Useful equipment
Clothes hook 78
Cup holders 75
Multimedia holder 76
Useful features
12-volt socket in the interior 79
12-volt socket in the luggage compartment 79
Ashtray 79
Cigarette lighter 80
Pockets 78
Reflective vest 209
Storage compartment 73
Ticket holder 74
Useful links 2
User account
Configuration wizard 98
User profile 106, 111

V

Variable loading floor 86
vCard 146, 148
Vehicle battery
charging 204
Checking the condition 204
Safety instructions 203
Warning light 43
Winter operation 204
Vehicle care 191
Exterior 194
Vehicle cleaning 191
Exterior 194
Windscreens 194
Vehicle dimensions 233
Vehicle height 233
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 231
Vehicle length 233
Vehicle settings 158
Vehicle status
Auto Check Control 47
Vehicle systems 158
Vehicle tool kit 210
Vehicle width 233
Vest 209
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 231
Visibility 65
Visors 66
Voice control 99
Commands 100
Correction of a voice command input 100
Help 100
Not recognising a voice command 100
Operation principle 100
Settings 103
Stopping/restoring entry 100
switching on/off 99
Voicemail 130
Volume 97
Volume setting 97

W

Warning at when speeding 49
Warning lights 37
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 37
Warning triangle 209
Warranty 6
Waste container 75
Water
driving through 168
Weather conditions 190
Weights 231, 232

Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 212
Caps 212
Loosening and tightening 212
Wheels 205
Directional tyres 205
Full trim 211
Load Index 207
Snow chains 208
Speed symbol 207
Tyre age 205
Tyre damage 205
Tyre pressure 206
Tyre storage 205
Winter tyres 208
Window operation 58
Windows
operating 58
Windscreen - heating 66
Windscreen washer fluid
Refilling 200
Warning light 45
Windscreen washing systems 67
Windscreen wipers and washers 67
Activation 67, 68
Add fluid 200
Replacing the windscreen wiper blade 221
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 220
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 220
Winter operation 208
All-year tyres 208
Diesel fuel 197
Snow chains 208
Vehicle battery 204
Winter tyres 208
Winter tyres 208
Wipers and washer
Warning light for windscreen washer fluid level 45
Wiping interval 67
Wireless Internet Hotspot
setting 104
WLAN 121, 135
Client 135
Connect 135
Connect to hotspot 135
Set hotspot 135
Switch hotspot on/off 135
WPS 104, 136
WLAN client
setting 104
WLAN Client 135
WPS 104, 136

Other Characters

ŠKODA Connect
register 109
Register 104
see Online Services 12
services Manager 109
Services Manager 104
Set 104
set to 109
ŠKODA Connect Online Services
Enable services 104
Register 104
ŠKODA OneApp application 139

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2017

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Rapid Spaceback anglicky 11.2017
5JJ012720AJ



5JJ012720AJ